

**Gift**

**MAJMA' - UL - BAHRAIN**  
OR  
**THE MINGLING OF THE TWO OCEANS**  
BY  
**PRINCE MUHAMMAD DĀRĀ SHIKŪH.**

EDITED IN THE ORIGINAL PERSIAN  
WITH  
ENGLISH TRANSLATION, NOTES AND VARIANTS  
BY  
**M. MAHFUZ-UL-HAQ**



**THE ASIATIC SOCIETY**  
1, Park Street \* Calcutta

Work No. 246  
© The Asiatic Society

181.074

D214.70

First Published in 1929  
Reprinted in 1982  
2nd Reprint in March 1998

**THE ASIATIC SOCIETY**  
**CALCUTTA-700016**

**Acc. No. B.8985**  
**Date. 29.2.2000**

*Published by*  
Dr. Amalendu De  
General Secretary  
The Asiatic Society  
1, Park Street  
Calcutta-700 016

SL NO. 048261

*Printed by*  
Mr. Maqsood Hasan  
New Asian Printers  
29/7, Phears Lane,  
Calcutta-700 073

Price Rs. 85.00

## Prefatory Note

I have great pleasure in presenting the third edition of the work entitled *Majma-ul-Bahrain* by Prince Muhammad Dara Shikuh, which is a reprint of the first edition of this work, to the scholarly world. The Asiatic Society published its first and second editions respectively in May 1929 and in April, 1982. I had the proud privilege of writing the preface to the second edition of this work. Again, I got the opportunity of writing a Foreword to the present edition.

It should be noted that the "Muslim intellectual perception of Hinduism" would help us to understand how "the establishment of Turkic rule in India opened up many opportunities for contact between Hinduism and Islam". Learning Sanskrit al-Biruni (d. after 1050 A.D.) translated Sanskrit Classics into Arabic and he wrote *Kitab fi tahqiq malil-Hind* for acquainting his 'Ghaznavid rulers with Hinduism'. He also observed that "at the level of the common people, anthropomorphism is found in Hinduism, Islam, Jewry and Christianity." The initiative taken up by al-Biruni for translating Sanskrit works into Arabic was undertaken at a later period by some other Muslim Scholars, who were well conversant in Sanskrit Language.

Several Muslim rulers "ordered the translation of various Sanskrit works into Persian in order both to satisfy their own intellectual curiosity and to increase Muslim understanding of Hinduism." There was no doubt that the *Maktab Khana*, a translation bureau of Akbar, "helped considerably to change the Muslim perception of Hinduism." The 'most remarkable' productions of this bureau were "the translations of the *Mahabharata*, the *Ramayana* and the *Yoga Vashishta*." Akbar thought that the translation of texts from both Hinduism and Islam "would form a basis for a united search for truth"

and would also “enable the people to understand the true spirit of their religion”. In this way the Emperor “sought to heal the religious differences amongst his subjects.” As a result of the translation of Sanskrit works into Persian, the Muslim intellectuals became aware of ‘the Vedanta school of Hindu philosophy.’

At a later period Akbar’s *Sulh-i-Kulh* or path of uninterrupted peace in relationship with all people, was carried on by Prince Dara Shikuh, who translated the *Upanishad* from Sanskrit into Persian “in order to discover *Wahdat al-Wujud* doctrines hidden in them”. He criticised the Hindu theologians for “hiding the Upanishadic truth from both Hindus and Muslims.” He believed that “his translation would help mystics of both faiths.” In his work *Majma-ul-Bahrain (The Mingling of Two Oceans)*, Dara Shikuh “tried to prove that an appreciation of the deeper elements in Sufism and Hindu mysticism could be achieved only by the elite of both religions.” He compared the Islamic Sufi concepts with those of Hindu mysticism and came to this conclusion that “they were identical.” Through his theological discourses, Dara Shikuh infused the spirit of liberalism into the medieval Indian life and expanded the horizon of Indian mind.

The publication of the third edition of this work indicates that the scholars and general readers who are engaged in studying Indian theological discourses are attracted to Dara Shikuh’s views.

Amalendu De  
General Secretary  
The Asiatic Society

March 19, 1998

## FOREWORD.

The 'science of religion' has in the last fifty years developed and progressed in many ways. We have the comparative, the historical, the sociological and the psychological methods. Of late a new school has arisen which is well-exemplified by its forerunner James (*Varieties of Religious Experience*), and latterly by Otto (*Das Heilige* and *Die Religionen*), a school which relegates history and philology to the background to concentrate in the first place on the religious experience itself. Pratt in his recent work *The Pilgrimage of Buddhism* applies the principle in a practical way and rightly says: "To give the feeling of an alien religion it is necessary to do more than expound its concepts and describe its history. One must catch its emotional undertone, enter sympathetically into its sentiments, feel one's way into its symbols, its cult, its art, and then seek to impart these things not merely by scientific exposition but in all sorts of indirect ways." *Non scholae sed vitae* is the motto of this school.

Nevertheless, history and philology will remain indispensable accessories. And also in the historical method there is development and subdivision. A group of phenomena of great interest and importance, but scarcely as yet touched upon, is the one furnished by what may be called the symbiotics of religion. In Europe, the confluence of paganism and Christianity has submerged all paganism without destroying it. In Java, the confluence of Indonesian animism, Hinduism and Islam has produced a doctrinal, terminological and sentimental complex which is difficult to analyse and is an example of permeation without suppression. In China, Confucianism and Buddhism have remained unmixed side by side, whilst Buddhism has intimately influenced Taoism, chiefly in the popular strata. In India, likewise, Hinduism and Islam have remained oil and water, though a subtle influence has perhaps been exercised upon later Islamic mysticism and magic by the surrounding Hindu atmosphere. On the contrary the purely artificial individual endeavours of an Akbar and a Dārā Shikūh to introduce Hindu thought and speculation into Persian literature have remained almost completely isolated and sterile. A little literary theological island has been created which has remained uninhabited and from which no travellers have undertaken further voyages into the world of Islām. The rich and fertile results of the introduction of Greek thought into the Arabic and the mediaeval western world is in this instance counterbalanced by an entire lack of consequences, and the effort was still-born. Nevertheless syncretistic and irenistic tendencies are always interesting and deserve attention. The sharply defined and definitely circumscribed literary activity of the few notable Muhammadaeus who have sought to transplant Indian thought into the Islamic world is of such a nature and moreover connected with incidents of human and dramatic value.

It is difficult to decide where to begin in this study: with the artificial endeavours of rulers, like Akbar or Dārā Shikūh or with those of humbler mystics without autocratic influence. One might either

prefer to approach the problem through translations such as the Persian translation of the Upaniṣads or through systematic treatises such as the one that forms the subject of the present volume. The whole subject has been scarcely touched. Speyer in his *De Indische Theosophie* has in one of his chapters dealt with the influence of Indian theosophy on the West and has shortly spoken about Kabir, the Sikhs, Akbar, and Ram Mohan Roy. De Massignon has recently published and translated the conversations between Dārā Shikūh and Bābā Lāl Dās. 'Abdul Wali has dealt with the relations between Dārā Shikūh and Sarmad (*Journal*, A.S.B., Vol. XX). The most fundamental discussion, however, hitherto, of Indian influence on Muhammadan mysticism seems M. Horten's *Indische Strömungen in der islamischen Mystik* (Heidelberg 1927 and 1928). The two parts of the work contain ample bibliographical references.

Now Professor Mahfuz-ul-Haq comes, in the present publication, with a contribution of singular interest for this subject. It is not that this "Mingling of the two Oceans" proves to be a book of deep insight or great spirituality. On the contrary, it seems 'poor in spirit' and largely verbal. But it gives us a starting point. From this little book we can work backwards and forwards. It is an apt focus for further research.

Professor Haq, by his painstaking translation, and by the fullness of his annotation, has deserved well of his readers and has made easy the task of students in this particular field who may be neither Sanskritists nor Persianists. Above all, by his careful and straightforward work he has taken away a false glamour with which the tragic death of its author had endowed the booklet as long as it remained sealed. But in this connection a word of caution suggests itself. We feel that the absence of the glow of true inspiration in the treatise is obvious. But is this poverty of quality a true measure of Dārā's attitude and endowments? From other data known concerning him it is legitimate to regard this question as one open to a certain measure of doubt. Have we not rather to esteem the matter-of-fact substance and the terminological comparisons of the treatise not as the measure of his vision but as the measure of his prudence? After all he was executed as a heretic. Could he in his time and in his circumstances have said more than he did in this work without danger of dire consequences? All these are matters of speculation, but of great human interest. We shall only know for certain when his whole *œuvre* is made accessible to us, and we are grateful to Professor Haq for having made a beginning. Dārā Shikūh, whether he was great of soul or only an aristocratic but small dabbler in great things, will remain a tragic figure in human history. As the last continuator of a short line of activity begun by his great-grandfather, the great Akbar, he is also an historical figure in the development of Indian thought. For all these and many other reasons we welcome the present work in which from beyond the gulf of death the voice of Hindu-Muslim Unity has been given life again, insistent, sincere, and tragic.

CALCUTTA : }  
15th May, 1929. }

JOHAN VAN MANEN.

## PREFACE

The founder of the Asiatic Society, Sir William Jones, initiated discussion on religions of different countries in a comparative manner. A new branch of human knowledge, Comparative Religion, developed and progressed in this way in our country. Efforts were made by the Asiatic Society to unfold various aspects of social and religious life of the Asiatic peoples. The publication of the Bibliotheca Indica Series, started in 1849, was a collection of works representing Oriental literature and containing original text editions as well as translations into English including bibliographies, dictionaries, grammars and studies. The New Series had begun in 1860, and is still continuing. In this Series, in 1929, the Asiatic Society published the original Persian Text of *Majma-UL-Bahrain* (1654-1655) by Prince Muhammad Dara Shikuh (1615-1659). In the same year the English translation of this text along with notes and variants was done by Professor M. Mahfuz-UL-Haq of the Presidency College, Calcutta. Professor Haq consulted five Manuscripts of *Majma-UL-Bahrain* available in different parts of India in preparing the present text. He also used the Arabic version of *Majma-UL-Bahrain*. But he could not secure a copy of Urdu translation of this work by Gocul Prasad.

It is gratifying to note that Professor Haq received ungrudging assistance from several noted scholars in editing this work. At the initial stage Dr. Surendra Nath Das Gupta was associated with it and made some important suggestions. Professor Nilmoni Chakravarti helped Professor Haq in identifying and transliterating the Sanskrit terms. As regards the vast Islamic bibliography and Quaranic literature Professor Haq got help from his teacher and colleague Dr. M. Hidayat Husain. The urge for acquiring knowledge on comparative religion was so strong that the scholars of different communities could move together to produce such a valuable work.

The attention of the scholars to the works and ideas of Dara Shikuh was, however, drawn by the famous historian William Irvine, who in a letter to Sir Jadunath Sarkar in August 1905, pointed out: "The losing side (e.g. Dara Shikuh's) always gets

scanty justice in histories'. Sir Jadunath threw enough light on the career and character of Dara Shikuh as 'a soldier and a politician' in his *History of Aurangzib* and he suggested to Dr. Kalika Ranjan Qanungo the idea of a monograph on Dara Shikuh. Accordingly, Dr. Qanungo took up the study of the tragic career of the Philosopher-Prince and published his work *Dara Shukoh* in 1935. In his study of Dara Shikuh Dr. Qanungo took his clue from the observations of William Irvine. Afterwards a very learned article entitled *Les Entretiens de Lahore* by Huart and Massignon came out in the *Journal Asiatique* in October-December 1926 which gave 'a new turn' to Dr. Qanungo's study.

In spite of the second edition of Dr. Qanungo's work, which was published after a lapse of about seventeen years, and the monographs and papers of Rezaul Karim (*Sadhak Dara Shikuh*, Calcutta, 1944), Bikramjit Hasrat, *Dara Shikuh, Life and Works*, (Santinetan, 1953), Dr. Suniti Kumar Chatterji (*Sanskriti Silpa Itihas*, Calcutta, 1976) and Syed Muztaba Ali (*Jubaraj-Raja-Kahinir Patabhumi*, 1381 B. S.) on this aspect, the study of Dara Shikuh did not progress much. Realizing the importance of the study of Dara Shikuh in the present context of Indian life, Dr. Suniti Kumar Chatterji as President of the Dara Shikuh—Rammohun Institute, in collaboration with its Secretary Rabiuddin Ahmed, organized a seminar in Calcutta on the *Life and Thoughts of Prince Dara Shikuh* on 20-21 March, 1976 in which prominent scholars took part.

In this way the ground was prepared by several scholars to develop the study of Dara Shikuh in our country. I am presenting the second edition which is a reprint of the first edition of *Majma-ul-Bahrain* to the scholarly world with this expectation that they would come forward to make "a correct assessment of the place of Dara Shikuh in the history of India and a proper appraisal of his thoughts and ideas which are of great importance even to-day."

10 April, 1982.

Amalendu De  
General Secretary.



## CONTENTS.

	<i>Page</i>
1. Foreword .. .. .	V
2. Contents .. .. .	VII
3. Table of Transliteration .. .. .	VIII
4. Errata .. .. .	VIII
5. Introduction .. .. .	1
6. Synopsis of Contents of the English Translation .. .. .	36
7. English Translation .. .. .	37
8. Synopsis of Contents of the Persian Text .. .. .	78
9. Persian Text .. .. .	79
10. Variants .. .. .	117
11. Indexes .. .. .	135
(1) Names of Persons .. .. .	135
(2) Technical Terms, Important Words, Sects, Ṣūfī Orders, etc. .. .. .	140
(3) Books mentioned in the Text and the Notes' .. .. .	145
(4) Places mentioned in the Notes .. .. .	146

---

### IMPORTANT ERRATUM.

All page numbers given in the margins on p. 78 of the work (p. 2 of Section III, Text) and on pp. 117-128 of the work (pp. 1-12 of Section IV, Variants) should be increased by 2, as by an oversight the page numbers of the title leaves of the two sections have not been taken into account. Owners are advised to make the necessary corrections in their copies.

## TABLE OF TRANSLITERATION.

..... ڪ.	ضی ..... d.
ث ..... th.	ط ..... t.
چ ..... ch.	ظ ..... z.
ح ..... h.	ع ..... 'e,'i,'u
خ ..... kh.	غ ..... gh.
ذ ..... dh.	ق ..... k.
ز ..... z.	و ..... ū.
ژ ..... zh.	ء ..... 'a,'i,'u.
س ..... sh.	ی ..... i, y.
ص ..... s.	

### ERRATA.

	<i>For</i>	<i>read</i>
p. 3, l. 3	Kandhār	Kandahār.
p. 11, l. 17	„ <i>Shath</i>	„ <i>Shath</i> .
p. 11, l. 34	„ Rūzbahān	„ Rūzbihān.
p. 12, l. 4	„ pp. xxx-xxxiii	„ pp. 30-33.
p. 21, l. 28	„ See (	„ (See
p. 23, l. 29	„ Kandhār	„ Kandahār.
p. 33, l. 13	„ page 5	„ page (III. 7) 83.
p. 39, l. 35	„ See p. 6, n I	„ See p. 8, n. I.
p. 40, l. 36	„ <i>Rasa</i>	„ 10 <i>Rasa</i> .
p. 47, l. 16	„ ( <i>Āwā</i> ) ā	„ ( <i>Āwāz</i> ).
p. 48, l. 10	„ <i>Dhamna</i>	„ <i>Damma</i> .
p. 51, l. 11	„ <i>rūyat</i>	„ <i>rāyat</i> .
p. 53, ll. 20, 21	„ (Ghaffārī	„ Ghifārī.
p. 55, l. 14	„ (Path) ā	„ (Path).
p. 60, l. 35	„ p. 13	„ p. 49.
p. 97, l. 10	„ اِنِّیْ رَاۗءُ	„ اِنِّیْ اَرَاۗءُ
p. 98, ll. 16, 17	„ نَغَارِی	„ نَغَارِی

## INTRODUCTION

DĀRĀ ŠHIKŪH, the author of the present work, was born at Ajmir, (Monday night, the 29th Šafar, 1024 A.H.),<sup>1</sup> the city hallowed by the memory of the great mystic, Mu'inuddīn Chishtī, whose tomb there has, for centuries past, been visited by the devoted followers of the Prophet. Dārā's father, Shāhjahān, had also frequented the tomb of the celebrated saint and prayed earnestly for the birth of a son, for his two eldest children had been daughters.<sup>2</sup> The prayer was accepted, as it is said, and Dārā's birth was naturally hailed with the outburst of feelings of joy by his devoted parents.

The prince himself records the circumstances attending his birth, while noticing the life of Mu'inuddīn Chishtī, in his *Safinat-ul-Awliyā*:<sup>3</sup>

"And this *šakīr* was born in the suburbs of Ajmir, by the (lake of) Sāgar Tāl, on the last day of Šafar, Monday midnight, 1024 A.H. As in the house of my respected father three daughters had been born and there were no male issues and (as) the age of His Majesty had reached twenty-four, he, on account of the faith and devotion that he had for the Khwāja (i.e. Mu'inuddīn Chishtī) prayed, with thousand presentations and supplications, for the birth of a son. And with His grace God, the Most High, brought this meanest slave of his (i.e. Dārā Šhikūh) into existence who hopes that He will grant him the grace of doing good and will bring to his host His goodwill and that of His friends. *Āmin*, Oh, Lord of the world." Thus, it is a happy coincidence that Dārā who was born at the city of a great mystic and divine turned out to be a devout Šūfī and a 'man of the Path' throughout his life.

### EARLY LIFE.

We know very little about Dārā's early life, for the Mughal historians, who have primarily been the chroniclers of the political events occurring in the State, give us very scanty information on the subject,

---

<sup>1</sup> *Bādshāhnāma* (Bib. Ind.), Vol. I, Part i, p. 391; *Amal-i-Šāhī* (Bib. Ind.), Vol. I, p. 92.

<sup>2</sup> *Īlāhī Nisā Begam* (b. 8th Šafar, 1023 A.H., and d. 4th Rabī' II, 1025 A.H.), and *Jahān Ārā Begam* (b. 21st Šafar, 1023 A.H. and d. Ramaḍān, 1093 A.H.).

<sup>3</sup> Nawal Kishōr Edition, p. 94.

and the first glimpse that we get of him is at the time when he is handed over to Jahāngir<sup>1</sup> as a hostage on behalf of his rebel father, Khurram, and jealously guarded by his step-grandmother, Nūr Jahān. Dārā was detained at Lahore up to the date of Shāhjahān's accession (1037 A.H.=1627 A.D.).<sup>2</sup> When Dārā Shikūh returned to Āgra he was about 13 years old and it must have been about this time that Shāhjahān would have given earnest and serious attention to imparting higher education to him. But there is nothing on record, so far as I know, to show how far Dārā Shikūh had progressed in his studies and what special endeavours had been made by his father to educate him in accordance with the best traditions of the Mughals. What the Court Historians inform us of is not about the progress made by Dārā in his study of Philosophy<sup>3</sup> or Calligraphy but of the showering of royal favours, in the form of presents and gifts and promotions in official rank, etc. But we must confess that such matters can hardly interest us. They can only be used profitably by a chronicler of Dārā's political history and not by one who aims at tracing the literary attainments of this illustrious prince. So, I am constrained to pass over the many unimportant events recorded in the official and non-official histories of the reigns of Shāhjahān and Aurangzib, and would only make a passing reference to some of the more important ones.

Dārā, as is generally known, was the most loved child of Shāhjahān and, as such, the Emperor did not like to lose his company by sending him to distant provinces. The other princes, Shujā', Murād and Aurangzib, were sent out as provincial governors but Dārā, "the eldest child of the Khilāfat," was kept at the Imperial Court, under the very eyes of his fond father who was unwilling to part company with him. This excess of love was unfortunate in two ways: it aroused the jealousy of the other princes and shut out Dārā from gaining first-hand experience as a soldier and an administrator. Undoubtedly, he was appointed

<sup>1</sup> Dārā was handed over, along with Aurangzib, to Jahāngir in June, 1626 A.D., *Muntakhab-ul-Lubāb*, Vol. I, p. 377; *Tuzuk-i-Jahāngiri* ('Aligarh, 1904,) p. 391; Beni Prasad's *Jahangir*, p. 394.

<sup>2</sup> Dārā Shikūh was escorted with Aurangzib to Āgra and received by the parents on the 1st Rajab, 1037 A.H. (*Bādshāhnāma*, Vol. I, Part i, pp. 177, 178 *Muntakhab-ul-Lubāb*, Vol. I, p. 398.)

<sup>3</sup> We only learn that Mullā Mirak Harawī was appointed as a tutor of Dārā (*Bādshāhnāma*, Vol. I, Part ii, p. 344; *Sakinat-ul-Awliyā*, p. 47).

governor of the provinces of Allahabad<sup>1</sup> and the Panjāb,<sup>2</sup> but he was allowed to live at the capital and rule through his agents. This rule by proxy could hardly make him experienced. He also led the Kāndhār campaign in 1053 A.H.<sup>3</sup> But, from the accounts of the campaign, it is apparent that it was not like an expedition led to a distant land or a march through difficult and perilous territory but rather the triumphant pageant of a victorious general. The expedition was unsuccessful, so was the previous one led by Aurangzib. But it cannot be denied that Dārā made certain tactical blunders and the over-concern of his father for him hastened his recall;<sup>4</sup> the task being thus left unaccomplished.

It will appear, therefore, that Dārā was more a man of the court than of the camp; but it cannot be denied, at the same time, that he possessed an extraordinary capacity for adaptability. A prince who had passed his days in the luxuries of a most magnificent Mughal court, would have been expected to be utterly hopeless in the field of action; but we find that Dārā can compose himself, he can adjust himself to his environment and can face the frowns of fortune with a dignified countenance and a lofty resignation. In the struggle for succession, which followed the illness of Shahjahan, in 1067 A.H., Dārā displayed all his latent powers of organisation and generalship; but he was no match for the sun-dried diplomat and general—Aurangzib. The three brothers Shujā', Aurangzib and Murād were marching on Āgra with a well-equipped and trained army and Dārā had to face them with all the resources at his disposal. He sent his son Sulaimān Shikūh against Shujā', who was routed and turned back, but, before Sulaimān could come to the rescue of his father, the latter had been defeated by the combined forces of Aurangzib and Murād, at Samūgarh (7th Ramadān, 1068 A.H.). The battle of Samūgarh sealed the fate of Dārā, who fled to Āgra, thence to Lahore, Multān, Bhakkar, Gujarāt and Cutch. He returned and fought with Aurangzib but only to be turned back after an ignominious defeat. The flight of Dārā is a very painful episode of suffering, privation and misery. His companions

<sup>1</sup> Allahabad and the forts of Rohtas and Janada was given to Dārā on the 1st Jamāda I, 1055 A.H. (*Bādshāhnāma*, Vol. II, p. 424).

<sup>2</sup> *Bādshāhnāma*, Vol. II, p. 611.

<sup>3</sup> *Ibid.*, Vol. II, pp. 291-308.

<sup>4</sup> *Muntakhab-ul-Lubāb*, (Bibl. Ind.), p. 591.

deserted him, his best supporters left him and the climax of calamities was reached when Nādira Begam, his dearest and best loved wife, was snatched away by the cruel hand of Death. Dārā presented a miserable figure; he was a broken man, and resigned himself to the will of God. His sufferings, however, were soon to end. He was captured by Malik Jiwan of Dadar, his Afghān host, and brought to Delhi under the escort of Aurangzib's generals and paraded through the streets on a large elephant. He underwent a mock trial at the hands of Aurangzib's 'Ulamā and was found guilty of apostasy from Islām. The younger brother passed orders for his execution,<sup>1</sup> which was carried out on the night of Wednesday, 21st Dhul Hijja,<sup>2</sup> 1069 A.H. So died Dārā, the eldest son of Shāhjahān and the would-be emperor of Hindūstān.

#### DĀRĀ AS AN AUTHOR.

A perusal of the writings of Dārā Shikūh will make it abundantly clear that he had Şūfistic leanings from a very early age. He

<sup>1</sup> For an account of the trial of Dārā Shikūh and the charges brought against him see *Maāthir-i-'Ālamgiri*, (Bib. Ind.), p. 4; *'Ālamgirnāma*, (Bib. Ind.), pp. 34-36, in which the charges are enumerated in some detail, and p. 432 where the immediate reasons of the execution are given; *Muntakhab-ul-Lubāb*, (Bib. Ind.), ii, p. 87, in which Dārā is accused of vilifying *Taşawwuf*; Manucci, *Storia Do Mogor*, i, pp. 356-358, gives a very graphic account of the execution but makes the highly incredible statement that Dārā wanted to embrace Christianity in his last moments; Bernier's account (*Travels*, p. 100), is brief; J. N. Sarkar (*Aurangzib*, i, pp. 296-299 and ii, pp. 213-219) gives the best account based, among others, on *Tārīkh-i-Shāh Shujā'* of Mir Muḥammad Ma'sūm.

<sup>2</sup> *'Ālamgirnāma*, (Bib. Ind.), 432. According to *Maāthir-i-'Ālamgiri*, (Bib. Ind.), p. 27, Dārā was executed on the night of Thursday, the 21st Dhul Hijja; the author of *'Amal-i-Şālih* (Elliott vii, p. 244) records on the 26th Dhul Hijja, Khāfī Khān (*Muntakhab-ul-Lubāb*, ii, p. 87) says that Dārā was executed on the last (*ākhir*) day of Dhul Hijja, (i.e. 20th), while Muftī Ghulām Sarwar (*Khazinat-ul-Aḡṣyā*, i, p. 174), records the date of execution on the 1st Muḥarram, 1070 A.H., which is evidently wrong. H. Blochmann (J.A.S.B., xxxix, i, p. 277) accepts the 21st Dhul Hijja and says that it was *Tuesday evening*. He observes:—

"The last day (29th Zī Hajjah) of the year 1069 coincides with Wednesday, 7th September, 1659. Hence the 21st Zī Hajjah is Tuesday, 30th August. The Muhammadan Historian says, Dārā was killed on a *Wednesday evening*. This fully agrees with our computation; for the Muhammadan Wednesday commenced on Tuesday, 6 o'clock P.M."

had studied the well-known works of the Şūfis of Islām and had examined their contents very closely and minutely. We find him making very apt quotations from the works of the various masters of Şūfism and also deducing relevant, but mostly independent, conclusions from the Holy Qur'ān and the Traditions of the Prophet. He appears to be independent in his judgment and bold in his conclusions. He does not seem to make a fetish of the stereotyped dogmas nor, necessarily, follows the beaten path. His studies in Şūfism lead him to the conclusion that Truth is not the exclusive property of any particular or 'chosen' race but that it can be found in all religions and at all times. But this conclusion was not reached in one day. It was the result of deep study and continued association with the divines of different religions and the Şūfis of various shades of opinion. This gradual development of the mental attitude of Dārā is a very interesting study. His is a mind which advances from the commonplace to the sublime. We can have some idea of this gradual advancement from a perusal of the various works and their contents, a list of which I give here in their chronological order :

1. *Safinat-ul-Awliyā*, is the first work of Dārā, which he wrote in his 25th year (27th Ramaḍān, 1049 A.H.). He writes in the introduction to this work that he had a particular respect for the Şūfis and the religious divines, and had studied their lives closely but had been disappointed to find that the details of their lives were scattered in the pages of so many different manuscripts. Moreover, as he remarks on p. 12, the dates of the birth and death of many mystics were wanting in the standard biographies of the Şūfis, to wit, the *Nafahāt-ul-Uns*, *Tārīkh-i-Yāfi'i* and *Tabakāt-i-Sultānī*. So he contrived to compose this work with the distinct object of supplying, within a very short compass, the details regarding the dates of birth and death, the place of burial and other important particulars of the saints of Islām. The extent as well as the conciseness of the work is apparent from the fact that in some 200 pages,<sup>1</sup> Dārā has noticed the lives of about 411 saints and divines, including the Prophet, his wives, the Orthodox Caliphs and the Imāmās. The following is a detailed list of the contents of the work :—

---

<sup>1</sup> The Nawal Kishūr edition (1884) comprises 218 pages.

1	Prophet Muhammad, the Caliphs (4), the <i>three Amīr-ul-Muminīn</i> and the <i>Imāms</i> (18)	..	..	1—26
2.	Saints of the <i>Ḳādirī</i> order	..	..	27—65
3.	Saints of the <i>Nakshbandī</i> order	..	..	66—94
4.	Saints of the <i>Chishtī</i> order	..	..	95—119
5.	Saints of the <i>Kubrawī</i> order	..	..	120—139
6.	Saints of the <i>Suhrawardī</i> order	..	..	140—159
7.	Saints of the various minor orders	..	..	160—377
8.	Wives of the Prophet	..	..	378—388
9.	Daughters of the Prophet	..	..	389—392
10.	Female mystics	..	..	393—417

In the introduction to the work *Dārā* styles himself, as he has done in most of his later works, *Hanafī*, *Ḳādirī*, namely, a follower of Imām Abū Ḥanīfa and a *Murīd* of the order which owes its origin to Shaikh 'Abdul Ḳādir of Gilān, and concludes by hoping that his (*i. e.* *Dārā's*) future may be happy through the grace of the many divines and mystics whose lives he has noticed in this work.

2. *Sakinat-ul-Awliyā*.—This is *Dārā's* second work which he wrote in his 28th year (p. 134),<sup>1</sup> in 1052 A.H. (p. 6), dealing with the biography of Miḡān Mīr, or Miḡān Jīv, the spiritual guide of his *Pīr* and *Murshīd*, Mullā Shāh,<sup>2</sup> called *Lisānullāh*, and his many disciples. *Dārā Shikūh* writes in the introduction to this work that on a certain Thursday, in the 24th year of his life, an angel cried out to him, in his dream, that he will get such a reward from God as has not been bestowed on any previous king, and the fulfilment of this message came on the 29th Dhul Ḥijja, 1049, when he was initiated into the *Ḳādirī* order by Mullā Shāh, who, according to *Dārā*, was the greatest divine of his time. *Dārā*, besides noticing at considerable length the lives of Miḡān Jīv, his sister Jamāl Ḳhātūn, and his many disciples, the most notable among

<sup>1</sup> Urdū translation lithographed at Lahore.

<sup>2</sup> In Binyon's *The Court Painters of the Grand Moghuls* (Milford, 1921), Plate No. XXXIII, there is a fine miniature portraying Miḡān Jīv and Mullā Shāh sitting opposite to each other. And in Havell's *Indian Painting and Sculpture*, (London, 1908), there is a fine painting, reproduced in colour, in which Mullā Shāh and Ḳhwāja 'Abdullāh are seen sitting opposite to Miḡān Jīv, and in E. Blochet's *Les Enluminures des Manuscrits Orientaux* (Paris, 1920), there is a portrait of *Dārā Shikūh* and Mullā Shāh, which the learned author could not identify.



whom is Mullā Shāh, discusses various Sūfistic and religious problems, such as the need of a spiritual guide, the way to find him, the desirability or otherwise of *Sam'ī* (or engagement in hearing esoteric songs), the problem of the vision of God (or *rūyat*), etc. In short, the work is replete with interesting discussions on the various problems of the Path and can be read with profit by the serious students of Sūfism. It appears that Dārā has supported his arguments by reference to or quotations from the various standard works of Tradition or Sūfism and the names of the following works, to which Dārā has referred in this book, may serve to give an idea of the extensive studies of this prince: *Kashf-ul-Mahjūb* (p. 5), *Tārīkh-i-Yāfi'i* (p. 13), *Mu'jam-ul-Buldān* (p. 14), *Ṣaḥīḥ Muslim* (p. 24), *Mishkāt* (p. 24), *Baḥr-ul-Hakā'ik* (p. 63), *Tafsīr-i-Sullamī*, (p. 63), *Tafsīr-i-'Arā'is* (p. 64), *Tafsīr-i-Kubḥarī* (p. 64), *Faṣl-ul-Khitāb* (p. 65), *Takmila* (p. 81), *Tafsīr-i-Husainī* (p. 135).

This work is also valuable in another way, namely, that it gives us an insight into the relation which existed between Dārā and Miṣyān Jiv and Mullā Shāh. He first meets Miṣyān Jiv in the company of his father, Shāhjahān, in 1043 A.H.,<sup>1</sup> and the immediate effect of this meeting is his complete recovery from the serious malady he had been suffering from for the last four months (pp. 38, 39). The second visit of Dārā, which was also paid in company of his father<sup>2</sup>, produces a still greater effect on him. He goes bare-footed to the upper storey of Miṣyān Jiv's house and, out of reverence to the saint, gathers the chewed clove thrown away by him. Next, he goes to him alone and pays him homage by placing his hands at his feet (p. 41). This opened the portals of Divine mysteries on Dārā and Miṣyān Mir pronounced him to be his "very life and vision," (p. 42). And it was through the kindness of Miṣyān Mir that Dārā received lessons in *Mushāhida* (or, Beholding of God) and also witnessed the *Lailat-ul-Qadr*, on the 27th Ramadān, 1050 A.H. The relations that existed between Dārā and his spiritual guide, Mullā Shāh, were more intimate and endured up to the latter's death, in 1072 A.H. It is impossible to reproduce even in brief the many personal reminiscences of Dārā's relations with Mullā Shāh which the

<sup>1</sup> The interview took place on the 17th Shawwāl, 1043 A.H. (see *Bādshāhnāma*, vol. I, part ii, p. 12 and *Sakinat-ul-Awliyā*, pp. 38, 39).

<sup>2</sup> This interview took place on the 8th Rajab, 1044 A.H. (see *Bādshāhnāma*, vol. I, part ii, p. 65 and *Sakinat-ul-Awliyā*, p. 39).

former has recorded in the *Sakina*, but the following extract from the letters which the latter wrote to Dārā may serve to show the esteem in which the prince was held by his *Pir* and *Murshid*. He writes: “. . . I repose much trust in your wisdom and understanding . . .” (Letter No. 1, p. 140). “You are well informed of divine mysteries . . .” (Letter No. 3, p. 141). . . . “O! temporal and spiritual King . . .” (Letter No. 9, p. 147), etc.

Moreover, Mullā Shāh has written a special *Ghazal* in which he has exalted the spiritual attainments of Dārā Shikūh. He writes<sup>1</sup>:—

The first and the second *Ṣāhib Kīrān* (namely Amīr Timūr and Shāhjahān) are the kings of grandeur, (while) our Dārā Shikūh is the *Ṣāhib Kīrān* of heart.

From the universe, the provision of the two worlds, he has brought under his grip on account of the merchandise of his heart.

We also learn from the *Sakinat-ul-Awliyā* that Mullā Shāh had asked Dārā to impart spiritual instructions to the *murīds*; but the ‘*Ulamā*’ who were known to Dārā dissuaded him from doing so (p. 135). He took omen from the *Ḳur’ān* which was favourable to him but it appears that he never actually engaged himself in imparting spiritual instructions. Mullā Shāh exhorted Dārā, on the eve of his departure to Kashmīr, “to advise the companions (*yārs*) as he was the wisest among them”; and Dārā, in his turn, requested him to pray for his future salvation (p. 138). It also appears that Mullā Shāh was of opinion that the propagation of the *Ḳādirī* mission in India would take place at the hands of the prince (p. 139). Of the religious exercises in which Dārā engaged himself, there is one which deserves special mention, namely, his exercise of restraining the breath. He writes, “One day he (Mullā Shāh) said that the exercise of restraining the breath which prevails in our order is absent from all others, and is extremely difficult to perform. He taught me the method which is peculiar to this order. Of the exercises in which I engaged myself in the beginning (of my spiritualistic

<sup>1</sup> *Sakinat-ul-Awliyā*, Curzon Collection, No. 443, fol. 83b:

صاحبقران اول و ثانی قرین حشمت اند      داراشکوه ما شده صاحبقران دل  
آخر ز کائنات مقام دو کون را      کرد او بدست خود ز مقام دکان دل

career), this is one and, as a result, I could pass the whole night, whether it be long or short, in two breaths and, at times, my condition became such as if my life was going to be extinct."

3. *Risāla-i-Haḳ Numā*, or 'the Compass of the Truth,' is the third work of Dārā Shikūh. It is a small tract of some thirty pages<sup>1</sup> dealing with the various stages of spiritual development and discussing the ways and means of reaching the highest pitch of spiritual perfection. The prince writes in the introduction that "none should read this *Risāla* unless he has got the companionship of some perfect (divine)" (p. 6). Further, he adds that this tract is a compendium of *Futūḥāt*, *Fuṣūṣ-ul-Ḥikam*, *Lawā'ih*, *Lama'āt*, *Lawāmi'* and other works of Ṣūfism and expects that, "if this tract is examined by a man of God, he will justly remark what a (wonderful) gate of Divine inspiration has been opened to this *ḥaḳīr* and that God has, inspite of his being in this garb (of a prince), opened to him the portals of saintliness and divine knowledge; so that human beings may know that His favour is without any (particular) cause. He draws towards Himself whomsoever He likes, in whatever garb he be. This wealth (of Divine knowledge) is not bestowed on every one but has been bestowed specially on *him*." (p. 6). Dārā goes on speak in this strain. He says that his first work, *Safīna*, was a composition of the period of quest (after a perfect divine) and his second, *Sakīna*, was written after he had reached the companionship of such a divine and had learnt from him "the paths of *Sulūk* and the *Maḳāmāt* (or the stages of the Ṣūfis)," (p. 7). Lastly, he says, "Now that the gates of *Tawḥīd* (Divine Unity) and '*Irḡān* (Divine knowledge) have been opened to him by God, the Most Holy and High, and He has bestowed on him His special gifts and bounties, he records them in this tract." (p. 7). Dārā further speaks (p. 5) that he has uniformly named a book by taking omens from the Holy *Ḳur'ān*. He writes "In all my compositions I have followed the practice of taking omens from the Holy *Ḳur'ān* and naming them at the Divine instance. It had come to my mind to name this tract, *Haḳ Numā*, (or, the Compass of the Truth) and, when I took omen, the following Holy verse, which unmistakably points to this tract being a guide to truth and also to its greatness, came out":

---

<sup>1</sup> Lithographed at the Nawal Kishūr Press, Lucknow, 1910. It has also been translated into English and published by the Panini Office, Allahabad.

وَأَقْدَأَ آتَيْنَا مُوسَى الْكِتَابَ مِنْ بَعْدِ مَا أَهْلَكْنَا الْقُرُونَ الْأُولَىٰ وَبَصَّرَ لِلنَّاسِ  
 وَهُدًى وَرَحْمَةً لَّعَلَّهُمْ يَتَذَكَّرُونَ •

And certainly We gave Moses the Book after We had destroyed the former generations, clear arguments for men and a guidance and a mercy, that they may be mindful (Ch. xxviii : 43).

The tract is divided into six *faṣls* (or, sections) dealing with the four worlds of *Nāsūt*, or, the Human World (pp. 8, 9); the *Malakūt*, or, the Invisible World (p. 9-21); the *Jabarūt*, or, the Highest Heaven (p. 21-22); and *Lāhūt*, or the World of Divinity (p. 22). The fifth *faṣl* deals with *Hawīyat* or Divine Essence and the sixth is a continuation of the same discussion. The author concludes the work by quoting one of his quotations which shows that the tract was completed in 1056 A.H. and that it was written under inspiration :

“The whole of this tract is a compass of the Truth,  
 and was completed in the year one thousand and fifty-six.

Consider this to be the work of *Ḳādir* (i.e. the Absolute) and not  
 of *Ḳādirī* (i.e. *Dārā Ṣhikūh*),

Understand whatever I have said, and peace be on thee.”

4. *Ṣhaṭhiyāt*, or *Ḥasanāt-ul-‘Ārifīn*, is a collection of Ṣūfī aphorisms containing the ecstatic utterances of the mystics, which seemingly appear to be in direct contravention of the orthodox doctrines of Islām. The author says in the introduction that his mystic utterances and the expression of higher truths in moments of ecstasy gave rise to serious objections from interested quarters. He writes<sup>1</sup> :

“As I had become dissatisfied with the current books of the men of the Path, and at times used to utter words containing the highest truth, in my ecstatic states, and some ill-natured and insincere people, out of shallow knowledge, began to taunt and accuse me of heresies, it struck me that I should collect sayings called *Ṣhataḥat* of high-souled and eminent men of sanctity as authorities for my professions, to convince those who are imbued with the spirit of *Dajjal* instead of that of Christ or with that of Pharaoh instead of that of Moses or with that

<sup>1</sup> I quote the English translation, or rather the paraphrase, given by Pandit Sheo Narain, in the *Journal of the Punjab Historical Society*, Vol. II, No. 1, pp. 28, 29.

of Abū Jahl instead of that of a Muhammad. Some sayings had been, no doubt, collected by one Bukli<sup>1</sup>, but as they were in allegorical style, I have added more, and simplified the language so that it may be properly understood."

A perusal of the above extract will make it abundantly clear that Dārā had reached a very high stage of spiritual life and, if we take his statement to be correct, there is no gainsaying that he indulged in such ecstatic effusions as are the exclusive privilege of those alone who are spiritually perfect. He has boldly supported his aphorisms and utterances by writing this work, which not only embodies the ecstatic utterances of the various divines and mystics—such as Bāyazīd, Dhun Nūn al-Misrī, Sahl b. 'Abdullāh at-Tustarī, Abū Sa'id Kḥarrāz, Junaid al-Baghdādī, Ruwaim, Abū Bakr Wāsiṭī, Aḥmad-i-Ghazzālī, 'Abdul Kādir al-Jilānī, Ibn al-'Arabī and others—but also of Prophet Muḥammad, the four Orthodox Caliphs and Imām Zain al-'Ābidīn and Imām Ja'far-i-Šādiq. Dārā concludes by saying that some truth-seekers had asked him to embody in this work his own *Shath*, or aphorisms, but he replied by saying, "My *Shath* is that all the *Shaths* contained in this work are mine." This is certainly a very bold statement and may be said to do credit to the prince.

It appears from the introduction that Dārā Shikūh undertook to write this work in 1062 A.H., when he was 28 years of age (p. 1),<sup>2</sup> and actually completed it on Monday, the last day of Rabī' al-Awwal, 1064 A.H., (p. 64). His conclusion is interesting as it gives us an insight into his mental attitude. He writes (p. 64): "He is fortunate who finds taste in these matters, and is benefited by them and considers himself a sincere devotee of theirs (i.e. the Šūfis) and engages himself in such pursuits. God, the Generous, has said, 'We did not create the Jin and the human beings except for devotion.' All the erotic and esoteric commentators of the *Kur'ān* have explained devotion by the word '*Irjān* (or, Divine knowledge). Hence, nothing is better than *Tawḥīd* (monotheism) and *Ma'rifat* (Divine knowledge). . . ."

<sup>1</sup> The learned Pandit has wrongly read *Bakli* (بکلی) as *Bukli*. It is part of the name of Shaikh Rūzbahān Bakli, the well-known saint, whose life Dārā has noticed on p. 176 of his *Sakinat-ul-Awliyā* (d. 606 A.H.).

<sup>2</sup> *Ḥasanūt-ul-Ārifin*, (Urdū translation) lithographed at Lahore and published by Malik Faḥluddīn, Malik Ḥananuddīn and Malik Tājuddīn, *Kakkay Zaiy*.

5. *Majma'ul-Bahrain*, or 'the Mingling of the Two Oceans,' is the fifth work of Dārā Shikūh which he completed in 1065 A.H., namely, when he was forty-two years old. As I have discussed the work more fully in subsequent pages, (pp. xxx-xxxiii, *infra*.) I need not repeat what I have stated elsewhere.

6. *Upanishads*—This is a translation of some fifty chapters of the *Upanishads*, or *Upanikhat*, entitled *Sirr-i-Akbar*,<sup>1</sup> made by Dārā Shikūh, in 1067 A.H., or some two years before his execution.

The chief merit of this translation lies in its simplicity and it must always be considered as one of the best specimens of easy, flowing style. I cannot do better than present to the reader a translation of the introductory pages of this work, which will give him, I believe, an adequate idea as to the reasons which prompted Dārā to undertake this work; the pains that he took to read the Old and the New Testaments, the Psalms of David and other Scriptures; his disappointment at not finding in these scriptures a true solution of the problem of *Tawhīd*; and, finally, getting his heart's desire in the *Upanishads*.

He writes<sup>2</sup>: "Praise be to the Self which has made the dot on the letter *bi* (ب) of *Bismillāh*, (in the name of God), an eternal secret in all the revealed books; and *Al-Hamd* which is *Omūl-kitāb*, in the Holy *Kur'ān*, is a reference to His Great Name (*Ism-i-A'zam*), in which are included all the angels, Heavenly Books, Prophets and Apostles. *Preface*: Now, thus sayeth, this griefless *fakīr*, Muḥammad Dārā Shikūh, that when he visited the Paradise-like Kashmir, in 1050, he had, through Divine grace and His boundless mercy, occasion to become a disciple of Mullā Shāh . . . . . As he had an ardent desire for seeing the God-knowing devotees of the various 'orders' and hear their high utterances regarding monotheism, he had read the various works on mysticism and had himself composed tracts, but, inspite of this, his thirst for understanding *Tawhīd*, which is a vast ocean, was increasing more and more.

<sup>1</sup> Anquetil Duperron, 'the famous French traveller and discoverer of the Zend Avesta,' translated the *Upanishads* into French (not published) and into Latin, from the Persian translation made by Dārā Shikūh. It was published in two volumes in 1801 and 1802. (See the *Upanishads*, translated by Max Müller in the *Sacred Books of the East Series*, Vol. I, p. lviii.)

<sup>2</sup> *Sirr-i-Akbar*, (A.S.B. Curzon Collection, No. II, 154), fols. 1b, 2a, b, 3a, b, and 4a. See also J.A.S.B., (New Series), Vol. XIX, No. 7, pp. 242 to 244 and 250 to 252.

New problems were coming to his mind, the solution of which was impossible without a reference to the sayings of God or without (quoting) an authority from His Omniscient Self. Moreover, there were many secrets concealed in the Holy *Qur'ān* and the Sacred Book, whose interpreter it was difficult to find. So, he (i.e. the author) desired to read all the revealed Books, for the utterances of God elucidate and explain one another. It may be that in one place it is found in compendium, while in others it may be given in detail; and, as such, the compendium may be understood by the help of the detailed. I read the Old and the New Testaments and the Psalms of David and other scriptures but the discourse on *Tawhid* found in them was brief and in a summary form and, from the easy translations which have been made by interested persons, the object could not be realized. . . ."

Further, the author says that he examined the religious works of the Hindūs, "who do not negate monotheism," and found that the monotheistic verses contained in the four *Vedas* have been collected and elucidated in the *Upanikhat*, which is an ocean of monotheism. So he undertook a literal and correct translation of the work with the help of the Pandits and the Sanyāsīs of Benares and accomplished the work in 1067 A.H. He says: "Any difficult problem or sublime idea that came to his mind and was not solved in spite of his best efforts, becomes clear and solved with the help of this ancient work, which is undoubtedly the first heavenly Book and the fountain-head of the ocean of monotheism, and, in accordance with or rather an elucidation of the *Qur'ān*. And this verse appears to have been revealed for this very ancient book:

إِنَّ لِقُرْآنٍ كَرِيمٍ فِي كِتَابٍ مَكْنُونٍ لَا يَمْسُهُ إِلَّا الْمُطَهَّرُونَ - تَنْزِيلٍ مِنْ رَبِّ الْعَالَمِينَ

(Ch. LVI: 77, 78, 79.) • الْعَالَمِينَ

It is ascertainable that the above verse does not refer to the Psalms, the Pentateuch and the Gospels, nor to the Secret Tablet (*Lauh-i-Mahfūz*), as the word *tanzil* cannot be applied to the latter. Now, as *Upanikhat* is a hidden secret .. and the actual verses of the *Qur'ān* can be found in it, it is certain that the hidden book (or, *kitāb-i-maknūn*) is a reference to this very ancient book. This *Fakīr* has known unknown things and understood un-understood problems through the medium

of this book. And (he) had no other object in view (in translating this work) except that he would be personally benefited or that his issues, friends and the seekers of the Truth would gather its fruits. The graced one who, having set aside the promptings of passion, and casting off all prejudice, will read and understand this translation,—which is entitled *Sirr-i-Akbar* (or, the Great Secret)—will consider it to be Divine utterance, he will have no anxiety or fear or grief and will be helped and fortified with Divine grace . . . .”

7. *Bhāgvat Gitā*.—The Persian translation of this well-known Sanskrit work is ascribed to Dārā Shikūh in the manuscript copy (No. 1949) preserved in the India Office Library. Dr. Ethé is of opinion<sup>1</sup> that Dārā Shikūh and not Abul Faḍl, as wrongly asserted by Dr. Rieu,<sup>2</sup> is the author of the work. In view of the categorical statement made by Dr. Ethé it is difficult to discredit his statement. The translation does not bear any date but most probably it was not made before 1067 A.H., namely, the year in which Dārā translated the *Upanishads*.

To the above list we may add the following works, which are, more or less, of a fragmentary character :—

8. I learn from the *Makẖzan-ul-Gharā'ib*,<sup>3</sup> an extremely valuable biography of Persian poets, that Dārā Shikūh had compiled a *Bayāḍ*, or Anthology, which was used by the author of *Makẖzan-ul-Gharā'ib* in compiling his *Tadhkira*. It is unfortunate, however, that even a single copy of the *Bayāḍ* cannot be traced in any of the Oriental libraries. It is needless to add that had the *Bayāḍ* been available it must have thrown some light on the poetical taste of the prince and might also have enabled us to gather some more verses of the prince.

9. Dārā Shikūh is also the author of a large number of letters which are of no mean literary importance. The *Fayyāḍ-ul-Kawānīn*<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *Catalogue of Persian MSS. in the Library of the India Office*, Vol. I, column, 1089.

<sup>2</sup> *Catalogue of Pers. MSS. in the British Museum*, Vol. I, p. 39.

<sup>3</sup> MS. copy in the Oriental Public Library, Patna, (No. 230 of the *Hand-list*), p. 3.

<sup>4</sup> The *Fayyāḍ-ul-Kawānīn* is a valuable collection of a large number of letters divided into three books: “(i) Letters of kings and princes, (ii) Letters from nobles to each other and to kings and princes, and (iii) miscellaneous letters.” (Sarkar's *Aurangzib*, ii, p. 315). Copies of this work are extremely rare but I was fortunate



contains some eight letters written by the prince to Shāh Muḥammad Dilrubā, Shaikh Muḥibullāh of Allahabad and others, asking from them an explanation of certain abstruse points of *Tasawwuf*. I have also come across a number of letters, ascribed to him in certain books of *Inḥā* and also in *Majmū'a's*, or the fragmentary collection of small tracts, etc.

10. In the *Bibliothèque Nationale*, Paris, (No. 701 of Blochet's Catalogue), there is a MS. copy of *Nigāristān-i-Munīr*, which contains, at the end, the Introduction of a *Muraḳka'*, (or, Album), which was, as the compiler's note indicates, dictated by Dārā Shikūh. It is not known as to whether the Album was arranged by the Prince himself or that it belonged to some one else who asked him to write the Introduction. It may also be possible that this introduction in *Nigāristān* is of the same Album which Dārā presented to his "nearest and dearest wife," Nādira Begam, in 1051 A.H. (=1641-2 A.D.).

Besides the above works, of which the first four have been printed and the last three are in manuscript, there are other works ascribed to the authorship of Dārā which have not been traced so far. However, if an attempt is made at their identification and the statements of the various authors, who have ascribed hitherto untraced works to Dārā, are verified in the light of modern research it will, I hope, shed more light on the life and works of this prince. I append, herewith, a list of such works as are said to have been written by Dārā but have not, so far as I know, been traced in any of the important libraries of the East or the West :—

1. *Risāla-i-Mā'ārif*.—This is said to be a tract on, as its name indicates, the doctrines of mysticism. The author of *Khazinat-ul-Aṣfiyā*<sup>1</sup> (vol. I, p. 175) ascribes its authorship to Dārā Shikūh. Muḥammad Latif, in his *Lahore*<sup>2</sup>, has also included it in the list of Dārā Shikūh's works but the latter appears to have only copied it from the *Khazīna*.

---

in examining a MS. copy of the above work. I have taken down a transcription of the letters of Dārā Shikūh which I propose to publish sometime later. Two of the above letters are included in a MS. copy of *Safina-i-Baḥr-ul-Muḥit*, preserved in the Berlin Library (Pertsch, pp. 40, 45). Another letter which Dārā Shikūh wrote in 1055 A.H. (=1645 A.D.) is preserved in MS. No. 56 of the above library (Pertsch, p. 115) and a letter to Sarnad was published in the *Indian Antiquary*, 1923.

<sup>1</sup> By Muftī (Ḥulām Sarwar of Lahore (Lucknow. 1874).

<sup>2</sup> Latif's *Lahore* (1892), p. 64.

2. *Nādir-un-Nikāt*.—Dr. Ethé<sup>1</sup> has ascribed this work to Dārā Shikūh but has quoted no authority in favour of his assertion. It is not improbable, however, that *Nādir-un-Nikāt* is only another name of *Risāla-i-Haḡ Numā*, for a manuscript copy of the latter tract (in the A.S.B. Curzon Collection) bears the former title. It is equally probable that *Nādir-un-Nikāt* and *Mukālīma-i-Bābā Lāl wa Dārā Shikūh*<sup>2</sup> (of which I will speak later) are identical, for a manuscript copy of the latter work preserved in the O.P. Library<sup>3</sup> bears the title of *Maḡẓan-i-Nikāt*, which is closely allied to *Nādir-un-Nikāt*. It is however, difficult to choose between the two probables.

3. *Maḡẓnawī*.—It appears from the *Journal of the Punjab Historical Society* (vol. II, No. I)<sup>4</sup> that a Persian *Maḡẓnawī* said to have been composed by this prince, is mentioned in the *Maḡẓan*, a monthly magazine of Lahore (September, 1907).

4. It is stated in the above *Journal* that Dārā Shikūh is reported to have written an autobiography, but, so far, I have found no mention of such a work in the books I have consulted in connection with the life of this prince.

### DĀRĀ SHIKŪH AS A POET.

So far, we have described only the prose works of Dārā Shikūh or such other works as have been ascribed to his authorship but have not, as far as I know, been traced anywhere. Now we may discuss briefly the merits of Dārā as a poet. But, I must state at the outset, that the materials for such a discussion are very scanty. We know from authoritative sources that Dārā Shikūh composed a *Diwān*, entitled *Iḡṣr-i-A'zam*, which, according to the author of *Khazīnat-ul-Asfyā*, contained "a mine of information regarding *Tawḡīd*," and was actually perused by him. It is a pity, however, that such a valuable *Diwān* has not, as yet, found room in the well-known libraries of the East or the West, nor has seen the light of print. I was pleased to see an announcement in the *Nigār*, (an Urdū monthly of Bhūpāl), that the *Diwān* of

<sup>1</sup> *Catalogue of Persian MSS. in the India Office Library*, Vol. I, p. 275.

<sup>2</sup> *Journal of the Punjab Historical Society*, vol. II, No. I, p. 27.

<sup>3</sup> Pandit Sheo Narain's article on 'Dārā Shikūh as an author,' in the *Journal of the Punjab Historical Society*, vol. II, No. I, p. 26.

<sup>4</sup> *Ibid*, p. 25.

Dārā Shikūh has been discovered and that full particulars regarding this valuable manuscript will be published in a subsequent issue of the magazine. I waited for two years but no such description of the manuscript appeared. Finally, I wrote to the editor of the magazine who informed me, in reply, that the owner of the manuscript had left for England and I must wait till his return. Hence, my disappointment. I also found an announcement in the price-list of Hāji Jān Muḥ. Allāh. Bakbelī Ganā'i, the well-known book-sellers of Lahore, that the Quatrains of Dārā Shikūh (رباعیات داراشکوہ) are in the course of print. It is more than two years since I saw the announcement and I have been asked by the publishers to wait for some months more!

It is difficult to hazard any opinion regarding the contents of the *Diwān*, nor it is possible to say whether the *Quatrains*, which are said to be in the course of publication at Lahore, are included in the *Diwān*, or the *Maṭhnawī*, which has been ascribed to him, is also included in it. Such questions can only be answered on the publication of the *Diwān* or a list of its contents. For the time being, at least, we are to be contented with some 25 quatrains and a few *Ḡhazals* only, which have either been quoted by Dārā in his prose-works or have been, ascribed to him in the various *Tadhkiras*.

The largest number of *Quatrains*, totalling more than 20<sup>1</sup>, are quoted by Dārā in his *Ḥasanāt-ul-‘Ārisīn* and only a few more can be found in all his remaining works. Hence, it is apparent that the materials, as I have stated before, are very scanty. But we are to judge their value by their quality and not by their quantity. We find, that Dārā's verses were appreciated in his own life-time. The following appreciation from the pen of Mullā Shāh, who was himself an accomplished poet, will serve to convey an idea as to Dārā being a poet of no ordinary merit: <sup>2</sup>

“All the excellences are under the subjugation of an ‘*Ārif*, and this is well-established that he (also) possesses (some degree) of harmonious-

<sup>1</sup> I have calculated this number from my manuscript copy of *Ḥasanāt*, and have taken only such quatrains about which the author has distinctly mentioned that they are his composition. A perusal of other manuscripts may either increase or reduce this number.

<sup>2</sup> Mullā Shāh's letter to Dārā Shikūh in *Sakīnat-ul-Arīḡyā*, p. 144.

ness. What to say of your incomparable and heart-pleasing verses. How sweet fruits cannot be borne by this pure clay ?”

We learn from the *Tadhkiras* that Dārā had adopted the *Takhallus*, or *nom de plume*, of *Kādirī*, which testifies to his sincere devotion to the *Kādirī* order. *Sarkhush*, who wrote his *Kalimāt-ush-Shu'arā* only twenty-one years after the execution of Dārā, speaks of him in the following words<sup>1</sup> :—

“Muḥammad Dārā Shikūh styled as “*Shāh-i-Baland Ikbāl*,” the heir-apparent of *Shāhjahān Pādshāh*, was a prince of good disposition, fine imagination and handsome appearance. He had patience ; led the life of a *Ṣūfī*, was a friend of the devotees, and was also an Unitarian and a philosopher. He had a noble mind and a far-reaching intelligence. He expressed *Ṣūfistic* ideas in *Quatrains* and *Ghazals* and, in view of his adherence to the *Kādirī* order, adopted the pen-name of *Kādirī*.”

Then, the author proceeds to narrate a story showing Dārā's forbearance towards one of the buffoons of his court who had made a very impertinent joke at the expense of the prince.

The author concludes the notice of Dārā with the following remarks :—

“He has written excellent *Ṣūfistic* works and has solved difficult problems therein. A small *Diwān* of his verses has been collected.”

The same author, while giving an account of *Mitrā Radī*, *Dānīsh*, who came to India in the reign of *Shāhjahān*, writes :—

“Dārā Shikūh, having appreciated this verse<sup>2</sup> of his, selected it as *Misra'-i-Tarah* :

تاک را سر سبز دارای ابر نیسان در بهار  
قطره تامی می تواند شد چرا گوهر شود

Every one composed verses according to his liking. The prince also wrote a verse :<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *Afdaluddin Sarkhush* wrote his *Tadhkira* in 1090 A.H.

<sup>2</sup> Fol. 58 b. of my manuscript copy.

<sup>3</sup> The story is given on fols. 58b and 59a of my manuscript copy. The author of *Makhsan-ul-Qbarā'id* (p. 682, O.P. Library copy) writes that four poets.

سلطنت سهل است خود را آشنای فقر کن  
قطره تا دریا تواند شد چرا گوهر شود

“Kingship is easy ; make thyself familiar with the ways of asceticism,

(For), if a drop can be the ocean why should it (then) be the pearl.”

I cannot do better than quote some of his verses, from certain *Tadhkiras*, and leave them to the readers to pass their own judgment on the same ; but, I would ask them to keep in mind the fact that the verses were written at a time when the grandeur and magnificence of the Mughal court had reached the highest pitch of perfection and, in the midst of that mirth and merry-making, there was the heir-apparent who did think of the Transcendent and rise above the gross materialism of his day to the planes of higher spiritualism. He writes :

هر خم و پیچی که شد از تاب زلف یار شد  
دام شد تسبیح شد زنجیر شد زنگار شد

تا درست رسیدیم چو از خویش بریدیم  
از خویش گذشتن چه مبارک سفری بود

مردم شدم ناکه بقرآن گشتم  
عارف شدم وز خویش عربان گشتم  
پیدا کردم مرا ولیکن من هم  
پیدا کردم نرا و قربان گشتم

بخیه بر خرقه فنا کیشان موج آب حیات را ماند

including the prince, had written verses in reply ( جواب ) to the above verse of *Faizi*. I think, the biographer is wrong in ascribing the authorship of the verse to *Faizi* as it is not included in his *Diwan*.

## DĀRĀ SHIKŪH AND THE FINE ARTS.

Dārā Shikūh was a lover of the fine arts. He studied Caligraphy with Āḳā 'Abdur Raḡīd ad-Dailamī, the well-known Caligrapher at the court of Shāhjahān and the last great scribe of *Nasta'liq*. The author of *Tadhkira-i-Khughnawīsān*<sup>1</sup> states that Dārā wrote a very good hand in *Nasta'liq* and was the best pupil of Āḳā Raḡīd. He adds that none of the pupils of the Āḳā excelled him in fine penmanship. It may be added that there is a painting in the collection of Mr. A. Ghose of Calcutta in which Dārā Shikūh is depicted as taking his lessons in Caligraphy from the Āḳā.<sup>2</sup> Besides *Nasta'liq*, Dārā also wrote a very good hand in *Nashh*, and the specimens of his Caligraphy preserved in the various Oriental Libraries prove conclusively that he excelled both in *Nashh* and *Nasta'liq*.<sup>3</sup> He was also a great admirer of paint-

<sup>1</sup> By Qhulām Muḥammad, *Haft Raḡam*, (Bib. Indica), p. 54.

<sup>2</sup> The painting has been reproduced in the *Calcutta Review*, March, 1925.

<sup>3</sup> I know of the following autographs of Dārā Shikūh preserved in the various libraries of Europe and India :—

- (1) *Safinat-ul-Awliyā*, (Oriental Public Library, Patna, MS. No. 673) bearing the following note in the hand-writing of Dārā Shikūh :—

• ۱۰۵۰ • هذا كتاب سفينة الاوليا حرره محمد دارا شكوة حنفي قادري

Khān Bahādur 'Abdul Muḳtadir (*Catalogue of Persian MSS. in the Oriental Public Library, Patna, Vol. VIII, pp. 47, 48*) is of opinion that the MS. has been collated by Dārā Shikūh, as the marginal notes indicate, and not copied by him, as is generally asserted.

- (2) *Ḳur'ān*, written on deer skin in 1051 A.H., bearing the following note at the colophon :—

• ۱۰۵۰ • کتبہ بندۂ آتم داراشکوہ بن شامجهان بادشاہ نازی در مقام شامجهان آباد

Shams-ul-'ulamā Hāfiḡ Nadhīr Ahmad, who examined the MS. in the 'Aniz Bāgh Library, Hyderabad (Deccan), gives the following account of the MS. in the *Journal and Proceedings of the Asiatic Society of Bengal*, (New Series, 1917, p. xc): "The verses of the *Ḳur'ān* are written throughout in gold. The headings are illuminated with fine floral designs and the copy is beautifully illuminated throughout. The MS. is carefully preserved in a splendid binding."

- (3) *Penjeḡra*, written in a learned *Nashh* in gold. The MS. formerly belonged to the Būhār Library, (Imperial Library), Calcutta, but is now deposited with the Trustees of the Victoria Memorial Hall, Cal-

ings and a good judge of their technique and value. The Album which he presented to his "nearest and dearest wife." Nādira

- cutta (See *Catalogue Raisonné of Persian MSS. in the Būhār Library*, p. viii.)
- (4) *Dah Pand-i-Arasfū*, in fine, clear *Nasta'liq*, within gold-ruled borders preserved in the Victoria Memorial Hall, Calcutta.
  - (5) *Risāla-i-Ḥikmat-i-Arasfū*, copied by the prince in 1041 A.H. and now preserved in the Āṣifiya Library, Hyderabad (Deccan). (See the *Urdū Hand-list of the Library*, Vol. II, pp. 1770, 1771.)
  - (6) *Sharḥ-i-Diwān-i-Ḥāfi*, (by Saifuddīn Abul Ḥasan 'Abdur Raḥmān) defective at the beginning. The date of transcription is not given in the *Urdū Hand-list* (Vol. I, pp. 738, 739) of the Āṣifiya library, where the MS. is at present.
  - (7) A note on the fly-leaf of an autograph copy of a *Maḡnawī* of Bahāuddīn Sulṭān Walad, son of the well-known Jalāluddīn Rūmī. The MS. belonged to the Government of India and was noticed in the *Proceedings of the Asiatic Society of Bengal*, 1870. p. 251, but, unfortunately, is, now, no longer in the Government (Curzon) Collection of the Asiatic Society of Bengal. H. Blochmann published a facsimile of the Autograph-note of Dārā Shikūh in the *Journal of the Asiatic Society of Bengal*, 1870, p. 272, which runs as follows:—

هو القادر  
مثنوی سلطان ولد  
بنظ مبارک ایشان  
واقمه محمد دارا شکوة

- Blochmann has, due to an oversight, read هو القادر for هو القادر
- (8) A *Waslī* exhibited at the Sixth Session of the *Nadwat-ul-'Ulamā* held at Benares, in 1906. See (*An-Nadwa*, Vol. III, No. 4).
  - (9) A *Waslī* exhibited at the Second Session of the Indian Historical Records Commission held at Lahore, 1920. (See p. xxii of the *Proceedings of the Commission*).
  - (10) A *Waslī* in the Bodleian Library, Oxford, dated 1046 A.H. (=1636 A.D.). (See Sachau and Ethé's *Catalogue of Persian MSS. in the Bodleian Library*, Vol. I, Column No. 1090.)
  - (11) It appears from one of the Letters of Shihbī Nu'mānī, a well-known Urdū scholar, that Dr. Sir E. Denison Ross had, in his possession, an autograph of Dārā Shikūh (See *Makāsib-i-Shihbī*, Vol. II, p. 241).
  - (12) *Waslī* exhibited at the Fourth Meeting of the Indian Historical Records Commission held at Delhi, 1922. (See the *Proceedings of the Commission*, Vol. IV, p. 107 and *Memoirs of the Arch. Sur. of India*, No. 29, p. 12.)

Begam<sup>1</sup> and which bears the following inscription in his own handwriting :—

“This album was presented to his nearest and dearest friend, the Lady Nadira Begum by Prince Muhammad Dārā Shukoh, son of the Emperor Shahjahān in the year 1051 (1641-2 A.D.)”<sup>2</sup>, is one of the most valuable treasures of the Mughal Art.

Principal Percy Brown in his admirable *Indian Painting under the Mughals*, while discussing the value and importance of the Album, observes :—

“As a criterion of the artistic taste of a cultivated Mughal prince this *Muraqqa'* is of interest ; it shows that its original owner, while attracted by weak prettiness in some of his selections, was on the whole a good judge of a miniature and had gathered his examples with care.”

And, Cecil L. Burns, describing the Album in an illuminating article in the *Times of India Annual*, 1925, writes :—

“What the Koh-i-Noor is to other eastern diamonds, surely this richly bound volume in wrought leather, containing miniatures by Persian, Central Asian and Mughal artists, and specimens of Calligraphy of the highest quality of the penman's and painter's art, must be to any other volume of a similar character..... The album is

(13) An autograph-note on the valuable Album which Dārā Shikūh presented to his “nearest and dearest wife,” Nādira Begam, in 1051 A.H.

It may be added, here, that an ornamented and illuminated copy of the *Ḳur'ān* which, it is believed, was actually used by Dārā Shikūh, is now in the collection of Nawwāb Ḥusāmuddīn Ḥaidar of Comilla. The author of *Safar Nāma-i-Maḡharī* (late Ḥājī Maḡhar 'Alīm Anṣārī Rūdawlāwī) gives us the following particulars regarding the copy :— ‘Nawwāb Ḥusān Ḥaidar Ṣāhib showed me a MS. copy of the *Ḳur'ān* which was illuminated and ornamented with gold. It is written by a Persian scribe on thick, fine paper. The size is folio. My eyes were brightened on seeing the MS. It was this very *Ḳur'ān* from which Dārā Shikūh read daily. It bears his seal. The Nawwāb Ṣāhib got the MS. from a European lady. It is a unique copy of the *Ḳur'ān*. (p. 98 of the *Safar Nāma*).

<sup>1</sup> India Office Library R. and L. 944-1908.

<sup>2</sup> Smith (V. A.), *History of Fine Art in India and Ceylon*, (Oxford, 1911) pp. 457, 458. For a description of the Album see Percy Brown's *Indian Painting under the Mughals*, (1925), pp. 94, 95 ; *The Times of India Annual* 1925.



similar to such an one as Vasaris, the great biographer of the Renaissance in Italy, prepared of the drawings of the artists of that period. . . . . All are of the highest quality, of the schools represented, and afford a striking testimony to the knowledge and taste of the Prince who selected them."

#### WORKS WRITTEN AT THE INSTANCE OF DĀRĀ.

In addition to the works which are Dārā's own composition, there is a large number of books which have either been written at his instance, or have been dedicated to him as a tribute to his patronage of such authors. The number of the works of former class cannot be expected to be large but the works of the latter class are numerous and, as such, it will not be possible to notice all of them. Moreover, the identification of all such books has not been complete. I will, therefore, enumerate only the more important ones of this class.

Now, let us discuss the works of the former class :—

(1) *Mukālima-i-Dārā Shikūh wa Bābā Lāl*—contains a summary of the questions that were asked by Dārā Shikūh on the various topics of Hindū religion and ascetic life and the replies that were given to them by Bābā Lāl, a Hindū devotee of the Panjāb. It appears, from the investigations made by Pandit Sheo Narain,<sup>1</sup> that Bābā Lāl, actually named Lāl Dayāl, was a Khatri of Ḳaṣūr, who lived at his *Asthān*, at Dhiānpūr near Batāla. Dārā Shikūh intended to go to him, as he was a friend of Mīyān Jiv, but the saint himself came down to Lahore, where Dārā conversed with him.<sup>2</sup> It is, however, difficult to fix the actual date of these conversations; for there is no internal evidence, except one perhaps, to give us a clue to ascertain this point. From the seventh and the last sitting it can be ascertained that these conversations took place after Dārā's return from the expedition to Ḳandhār, in 1062 A.H.

In his *Hasanāt-ul-Ārifīn*, which he completed in 1064 A.H., Dārā has included the name of Bābā Lāl—the only Hindū whose aphorisms he has quoted. He writes (p. 40):

<sup>1</sup> In his "Dārā Shikūh as an author" (*Journal of the Punjab Historical Society*, Vol. II, No. 1, pp. 27, 28).

<sup>2</sup> Pandit Sheo Narain writes that he has found a manuscript copy of Bābā Lāl's biography, from which he has taken the above details.

“Bābā Lāl Mandiḡa is one of the perfect ‘Āriḡs, and I have seen none in the Hindū community who is equal to him in majesty and firmness. He told me, ‘There are ‘Āriḡs and perfect (divines) in every community through whose grace God grants salvation’ to that community’<sup>1</sup>.....”

In the *Majma‘-ul-Bahrain* also, (p. 24). Dārā has put down the name of this saint, whom he calls Bābā Lāl Bairāḡī, by the side of those Muḡammadan saints and divines who have been the best representatives of the Šūfi order in Islām. The inclusion of the name of a Hindū in such an exclusive list of Muslim divines shows unmistakably the high esteem in which this devotee was held by Dārā Šhikūh.

Hence, it is not surprising that Dārā did invite the saint and had the conversations, which passed between him and the mystic, recorded. It appears that Dārā’s private Secretary, Chandar Bhān,<sup>2</sup> was present on the occasion of these interviews and perhaps, acting as an interpreter, took a verbatim report of the whole dialogue, from which he prepared the present book, entitled *Mukālīma-i-Dārā Šhikūh wa Bābā Lāl*.

In the A.S.B. (Curzon Collection 1908-1910) there is a manuscript copy of *Pūthī Ūriḡi* in Persian, which contains the memoirs of Bābā Lāl and also an account of the interview which he had with Dārā Šhikūh in 1059 A.H. (= 1649 A.D.)

It may be added here, that there is a painting reproduced in Binyon’s *The Court Painters of the Grand Moghals*,<sup>3</sup> in which Dārā Šhikūh is depicted as sitting by the side of Bābā Lāl. Binyon gives us the following particulars regarding the Bābā :—

“Lāl Swāmi... was a Kshatriya, born in Malwa in the reign of Jahāngir; after having been initiated, he settled near Sirhind, in the Panjāb, where he built himself a hermitage, together with a temple, and was visited by a large number of disciples. Among those who were attracted by his teaching was Dārā Shikoh; two learned Hindus who

<sup>1</sup> In the same book (p. 44) Dārā, while quoting the aphorisms of Bābā Lāl, writes that this saint belonged to the order of Kabīr.

<sup>2</sup> Chandar Bhān was an inhabitant of Patyālā or of Lahore, as asserted by some. He was the *Mir Munḡhī* to Dārā and was appointed in the *Dār-ul-Ingāh* of Šhāhjahān. in 1066 A.H., and entitled Rāī Chandar Bhān. He died in 1068 A.H., or in 1073. He left several works including *Chahār Qhāman*, *Munḡhīāt-i-Brahman*, *Kūrḡnāma*, *Guldasta*, *Majma‘-ul-Wuzarā*, etc., and a *Diwān*.

<sup>3</sup> Humphrey Milford, (Oxford University Press), 1921, Plate No. XXII.

were in this prince's service have recorded, in a work entitled *Nādir-al-Nikāt*, the conversation, that took place between the Swami and the prince during seven interviews between them in the year 1649.<sup>1</sup>"

In another painting,<sup>2</sup> reproduced in the above book, the Bābā appears in a group of some twelve Indian Divines to wit, Rāy Dās, Pipā, Nāmdiv, Sā'in, Kamāl, Awghar, Kabir, Pir Machandar, Gorakh Jaḍrū, (?) Pir Panth Swāmi (?), and is styled there as Lāl Swāmi. A painting was also exhibited at the second meeting of the *Indian Historical Records Commission*<sup>3</sup> in which Dārā Shikūh and Bābā Lāl (called there Lāldās) are shown in each other's company.

And an un-identified painting in Percy Brown's *Indian Painting under the Mughals* (Plate No. XLVI from M. Demotte's collection), also portrays, in my opinion, the meeting scene between Dārā Shikūh and Bābā Lāl Dās.<sup>4</sup>

(2) *Jug Bāshist*—or a Persian translation of the famous Sanskrit, *Yoga Vāsishṭha*, was undertaken at the instance of Dārā Shikūh by one of his courtiers, whose name, unfortunately, we do not know. The translator says in the introduction that Prince Dārā Shikūh ordered him, in 1066 A.H., to translate the *Yoga Vāsishṭha* into simple Persian, for the other translations, and more specially, the one made by Mullā Šūfi,<sup>5</sup> did not serve the purpose of the seekers of the truth. The immediate reason, however, of having the book translated was that

<sup>1</sup> P. 82.

<sup>2</sup> Plate No. XIX.

<sup>3</sup> *Proceedings*, Appendix, p. XXV.

<sup>4</sup> The dialogues have been arranged and edited by one Chiranji Lāl and lithographed at Delhi in 1885. An Urdū translation, entitled *Aerār-i-Ma'rifat*, has also been published, some years back, by Dīwān Māyā Dās of Lahore and another, with the Persian text, and entitled *Shu'ā-i-Ma'rifat* was published by Munāfi Bulāki Dās of Delhi in 1896. I have perused the second lithographed copy and am surprised to find that it differs materially from the manuscript copy preserved in the Oriental Public Library, Patna, (No. 1449 of the Hand-list of Persian MSS.). Further, a perusal of the above MS. copy reveals the fact that the work was originally composed in Hindī and then translated into Persian (fol. 1a). It may be added, here, that MS. copies of the *Mukālima* in the Berlin Library, (Pertsch, No. 1,081,2) and the Bodleian Library (Ethé, Column 758) agree, as appears from the first line quoted in the catalogues, with the copy in the Oriental Public Library, Patna. Since the above was in type, an excellent text of the *Mukālima*, with its French translation, has been published by Huart and Massignon in the *Journal Asiatique*, Paris, Tome CCIX, No. 2.

<sup>5</sup> In A.S.B. Collection MS. No. 158, the name of the translator is Shaikh Šūfi.

both Vāsistha and Rām Chandar appeared, one night, before Dārā Shikūh in dream; the former asking Rām Chandar to embrace Dārā Shikūh which he did and then again asking him, (Rām Ch.) to give some sweets to Dārā, which he took and ate. As a result of this dream it came to the mind of Dārā to have the work translated into Persian. He commanded one of his courtiers to do the work which he performed in collaboration with certain well-known Pandits of the place.

(3) *Tārīkh-i-Shamshir Khānī*—an abridgement of the *Shāhnāma* made at the instance of Dārā. (See *Proceedings of the Indian Historical Records Commission*, Vol. II, p. xvii, and Pertsch, No. 708).

Of the works dedicated to Dārā I append, hereto, a list of only two:

(1) *Tibb-i-Dārā Shikūhī*<sup>1</sup>—is a big work of some 400 folios on "the general principles of medicine and the treatment of the various diseases" which was written by Nūruddīn Muḥammad b. 'Abdullāh b. 'Ain-ul-Mulk Shīrāzī. It was written about the year 1056 A.H.<sup>2</sup> and dedicated to Dārā Shikūh, the then heir-apparent of Shāhjahān.

(2) *Tarjuma-i-Akwāl-i-Wāsiṭī*—or a Persian translation of the sayings of the famous Ṣūfī, Abū Bakr b. Muḥammad b. Mūsā al-Wāsiṭī (d. C. 320 A.H., 932 A.D.), by one Ibrāhīm Miskīn who dedicated them to this prince in 1067, that is, only two years before his execution.<sup>3</sup>

### DĀRĀ'S RELIGIOUS VIEWS.

A close examination of the works of Dārā Shikūh, in their correct chronological order, will reveal the fact that his earlier studies were purely Ṣūfīstic in character and were not extended to an examination of the mystic systems of other religions. But the deeper and wider was his study the greater was the realization of the truths found in other religions and more outspoken the appreciation for them. There is no denying the fact that he must have received his education on old, orthodox lines but, nevertheless, he had the courage to cast away all prejudice and examine things in their true perspective. He writes himself in his introduction

<sup>1</sup> In the Paris MS. Nos. 857-859 (*Catalogue des Manuscrits Persans*, pp. 103, 104) the MS. is entitled '*Ilājāt-i-Dārā Shikūhī*'.

<sup>2</sup> The author writes in the introduction that he composed the work about the time Shāhjahān conquered Badakhshān, namely 1055-56 A.H.

<sup>3</sup> A MS. copy of the work is in the A.S.B. Library, see Ivanow's *Catalogue* p. 612.

to the translation of the *Upanishads* that after his discipleship of Mulla Shāh, in 1050 A.H., he came in close contact with the divines of the various religions and perused the Psalms, the Gospels and the Pentateuch. This marks the beginning of Dārā's examination of the systems of various religions. But in the books and tracts which he wrote before 1062, he does not express his opinion on the various religions, or, more specially, on Hindūism. In the *Shahihyāt* only (1062) we find him quoting the aphorisms of a Hindū divine, Bābā Lāl, which purports to declare that 'Truth is not the monopoly of any one religion.' The next work, in order of chronology, is the *Majma'-ul-Bahrain*, written in 1065, in which he has expressed his views very clearly, and is definitely of opinion that in the higher planes of the realization of Truth there is no essential difference between Hindūism and Islām. Dārā knew that such an outspoken expression of opinion must be considered as sacrilegious by a large section of the members of both the communities, so he gives the note of warning and says, "I have written this book for the members of my family and have nothing to do with the common ones of both the religions." This small book is an attempt to reconcile Hindūism and Islām. The author has endeavoured to show that the conception of the Elements, God, the Senses, the Almighty, the Soul, the Communion with the Infinite, the Day of Resurrection, the Universe, the Planets and the Cycles, etc., is practically the same in Hindūism and Islām. His attempt has been mostly confined to showing the points of identity between the two religions without exalting or undermining either. He is concerned with facts and puts them *as they are*. His is rather a comparative study of Hindūism and Islām with an attempt to point out the various points on which they meet. As a student of comparative religion he has put down the points of resemblance between the two religions, however superficial they may be, and, surprisingly enough, in his zeal for establishing a close identity between them, has chosen to ignore the many points of difference. But it must be admitted, at the same time, that Dārā had not renounced his own faith and become a Hindū as is asserted by a biased section of the community. The very Introduction, which he has begun with the praise of God, the Prophet, his companions and the descendants, will belie such a presumption, and a careful perusal of the later chapters will show that he was a Muslim through-

out, believing in the saints and the mystics of Islām and calling Muḥammed the 'last Prophet.'

From 1065 A.H. onwards, Dārā was more deeply interested in the study of Hindūism. In 1066 A.H., he got the *Jug Bāghisi* translated into Persian. A year later he himself translated the *Upanishads* into Persian prose. About this time he also translated the *Bhāgvat Gītā*<sup>1</sup> or, perhaps, had it translated by one of his courtiers.

In all these works there is not the slightest indication that Dārā had renounced Islām and embraced Hindūism. He is a Muslim throughout. He is of opinion that the *Vedas* are "revealed books" but certainly this could not amount to an apostasy from Islām. He believed in the *Kur'ān* and was of opinion that "the *Vedas* were in accordance with the *Kur'ān* or rather they were an interpretation of that." Can such an opinion amount to renouncing Islām? It is for the doctors of the Faith to pronounce an opinion on the point but, to a layman like myself, it appears that no one could possibly be declared a *Kāfir* on one's simply expressing the above views. There have been many revealed books, which according to the Muslim faith have been abrogated, but, nevertheless, they can be studied profitably by one who wishes to make a higher and deeper study of religions and theological problems. So, if Dārā found in the *Vedas* an elucidation and explanation of certain abstruse problems of the *Kur'ān*, he cannot be condemned. Mirzā Jānjānān Maḥzar, *Shahid* (d. 1130=1717 A.D.), who was a very well-known saint of India has expressed practically the same views but he has not been condemned by any. He writes<sup>2</sup>:  
 " . . . . . It appears from the ancient books of the Indians that the Divine Mercy, in the beginning of the creation of the human species, sent a Book, named the *Bed* (*Veda*), which is in four parts, in order to regulate the duties of this as well as the next world . . . . .  
 . . . All the schools (of the Hindus) unanimously believe in the unity of the most high God; consider the world to be created; believe in the

<sup>1</sup> Dr. Ethé writes in the *Catalogue of Pers. MSS. in the India Office Library* (c. 1089): "In the British Mus. copy it (i.e. *Bhagvat-Gita*) is wrongly ascribed to Abū-al faḍl; the real translator was, as a note on fol. 1a in the present copy proves, prince Dārā Shukūh"

<sup>2</sup> Extracts from the life and teachings of Mirzā Maḥzar, translated by the late Mawlawī 'Abdul Wall, J.A.S.B., Vol. XIX, pp. 236, 239.

destruction of the world, in the reward for good and bad conduct ; on the resurrection and accountability (of conduct) . . . . The rules and regulations of their faith are fully and well arranged. So it is evident that it had been a good religion but abrogated. In Islamic *Shari* no mention of any other abrogated religions, save Judaism and Christianity, is made ; whereas many other religions have undergone the process of obliteration and affirmation (i.e. changes).

It ought to be noted that according to the holy verse (of the Qur'ān) : ' *And there is not a people but a warner has from among them*' and also, ' *And every nation had an apostle,*' and other verses, there were prophets also in the countries of Hindustan, on whom be peace, and their account is contained in the books of the Hindus . . . . . "

If the above views cannot amount to an apostasy from Islām, it is difficult to understand how Dārā Shikūh could have been condemned for expressing practically the same views.

His works and writings are before us and, on examining them, we can only state that he was a Muslim throughout and, being a Šūfi himself, expressed such views, which, though appearing as revolting at first sight, cannot have amounted to an apostasy from Islām. What to say of Dārā ? If one cares to examine the works and writings of the most eminent Šūfis one will find that their aphorisms and paradoxes are more condemnable than those of Dārā Shikūh. We find that Mansūr was crucified, Shihābuddin Suhrawardī executed and Sarmad put to death, but time has vindicated their honour. Today, they are hailed as martyrs and sufferers on the Path ; and such is the case with Dārā. Time has vindicated his honour and, now, he is adored and admired by a large section of the Muslims as a prince who suffered death, not as an offender against Islām, but as one who fell a victim to the Imperialistic ambitions and aspirations of his wily, *fakīr* brother.

But yet we find that Dārā Shikūh was indicted by the ecclesiasts of the court of Aurangzib for his apostasy. According to *Maāthir-i-Ālamgīri*, the official history of Aurangzib, the charge against him was that "The pillars of the Canonical Law and Faith apprehended many kinds of disturbances from his life. So the Emperor, both out of necessity to protect the Holy Law, and also for reasons of State, considered it unlawful to allow Dārā to remain alive any longer as

a destroyer of the public peace."<sup>1</sup> But the above indictment is too meagre to need any comment. Anyone can choose to be the Champion of Islām and remove all those who stand in the way of the realization of his political ambitions.

### *Majma'-ul-Bahrain.*

This small tract is of supreme importance to a student of comparative religion as it embodies, so far as I know, the first and perhaps the last attempt of its kind to reconcile the two apparently divergent religions. It is the last original work of Dārā Shikūh and, as such, has an importance of its own. And, according to one authority,<sup>2</sup> it was this very work which brought about his death. It is said that this tract was laid before the ecclesiasts who declared its author a heretic and sentenced him to death, which was only too faithfully carried out by his over-zealous brother.

An examination of the concluding portion of the work will show that it was written in 1065 A.H., that is, when Dārā was 42. It appears from the Introduction that Dārā wrote this work, "according to his own inspiration and taste, for the members of his family." He declares openly, "I have nothing to do with the common folk of both the communities."

The tract begins with an Introduction and contains twenty sections having the following headings :—

1. The Elements.
2. The Senses.
3. The Religious Exercises.
4. The Attributes.
5. The Wind.
6. The Four Worlds.
7. The Fire.
8. The Light.
9. The Beholding of God.
10. The Names of God, the Most High.
11. The Apostleship and the Prophetship.
12. The *Barhmānd*.

<sup>1</sup> Jadu Nath Sarker's *Aurangzib*, Vol. II, p. 214.

<sup>2</sup> *Siyar-ul-Mutaakhhirin*, p. 403.



13. The Directions.
14. The Skies.
15. The Earths.
16. The Divisions of the Earth.
17. The *Barzak̄h*.
18. The Great Resurrection.
19. The *Mukt*.
20. The Night and the Day.

It is unfortunate that, although the MSS. of *Majma'-ul-Bahrain* are not rare in the libraries in India, they are full of clerical mistakes and also contain innumerable errors both of omission and commission. I have consulted five MSS. in preparing the present text, but to my great disappointment none of them could satisfy me. There are so many variants and the Persian transliteration of Sanskrit terms or quotations from the *Kur'ān* are so very different that the task of the editor becomes extremely difficult and, at times, even insurmountable.

The MSS. that I have used in preparing my text are :—

- (1) MS. from the Āsifiya Library, Hyderabad, dated 9th Rabi' I, 1224 A.H., transcribed by Sayyid Qharib 'Alī b. Sayyid Shāh 'Alī Rizā. The Librarian, Mawlawī 'Abbās Husain *Kantūrī* was good enough to have it copied under his supervision. The MS. contains innumerable clerical mistakes. I have named this MS. H.
- (2) A MS. from the (Khudā Baksh Khān) Oriental Public Library, Bankipore (No. 1450 of the Hand-list of Persian MSS. prepared by Khān Bahādur Abdul Muḩtadir), bearing no date of transcription nor the name of the scribe. It is a relatively better MS. than H, but, nevertheless, contains several orthographical mistakes and is not written in a clear hand. I have collated MS. H with the Oriental Public Library MS. which I name K.
- (3) A MS. from the Rāmpūr State Library, dated 22nd Dhul Hijja, 1226 A.H., copied by Muḩammad ḩāji Beg at the instance of Khwāja Mīr Kāsim. The MS. is imperfect in several ways. There are apparently spurious additions in the text which display Shiite tendencies. A perusal of the list of variants will confirm this statement.

I have got a transcription of the above MS. through Shams-ul-'ulamā M. Hidāyat Husain, who, in his turn, got it, as he informs me, through the kindness of Ḥāfiẓ Aḥmad 'Alī Khān, the Librarian of the Nawwāb's Palace Library. I have named this MS. R.

(4) A MS. from the Victoria Memorial Hall, Calcutta, which is displayed in the shelves of the Hall, as an autograph of Dārā Shikūh. I examined the MS. carefully and found that there was no internal or external evidence to prove or even suggest that the MS. was an autograph one. The handwriting is not that of Dārā Shikūh, for it is quite different from the known autographs of the prince. Moreover, there are so many omissions, inaccuracies and even mistakes of spelling that it is impossible for one to believe that it is an autograph copy of Dārā Shikūh. I have named the MS. V.

(5) MS. from the Asiatic Society of Bengal (Curzon Collection. No. 156, III, of the MS. Hand-list), which has been acquired quite recently. As the Text and Translation were already in type, I could use the MS. very sparingly. I have, however, made full use of it in preparing the list of variants. I may add here that had this MS. been available at the time of preparing my Text it would have helped me a great deal in preparing a relatively better text. I would call this MS. A.

Besides the above MSS. I have sometimes consulted the apparently unique MS. of the Arabic translation of *Majma'-ul-Bahrain* which is preserved in the Bihār Library, (Imperial Library, Calcutta.)<sup>1</sup> This translation was made by one Muḥammad Ṣāliḥ b. ash-Shaikh Aḥmad al-Miṣrī. and was of much use to me in correcting the Arabic quotations, etc.

An Urdū translation of *Majma'-ul-Bahrain*, entitled *Nūr-l-'Ain*, by one Gocul Prasad, was lithographed at Lucknow (1872), but, unfortunately, I could not secure a copy of that.

---

<sup>1</sup> Catalogue of Arabic MSS. in the Bihār Library (Imperial Library, Calcutta), prepared by Shams-ul-'ulamā Dr. M. Hidāyat Husain. pp. 150, 151.

The above description of the MSS. of *Majma'-ul-Bahrain* will make it abundantly clear that none of them by itself could possibly have been used as the basis of a good text. So, I had no other alternative than to prepare my text by collating all the MSS. and selecting the best reading for my text. I admit that all my selections may not be approved of by my readers and they may permit of further improvement, but, with the texts that I had, I fear I could not do better.

I may add here that in preparing the list of variants I have kept in view the fact that only such variations of the text should be noted as are material and cannot possibly be ascribed to a mistake on the part of the copyist. But in order to give the reader an idea of the large number of variations, I have noted down almost all the variations found on page 5 of the printed text, which, I think, will bear a striking testimony to the idiosyncracies of the copyists.

A very difficult task which confronted me was that of identification and transliteration of Sanskrit terms which had been so mutilated in the Persian text that in many cases it became almost impossible to identify them correctly. I explained my difficulty to my friend and colleague, Dr. Surendra Nath Das-Gupta, the author of the admirable *History of Indian Philosophy*, who was good enough to go through the first few pages of my English translation. On examining my MS. translation the learned doctor suggested to me that Dārā Shikūh had made several inaccurate statements in his text and it was desirable that foot-notes were added, explaining and correcting such statements. He also promised to write the foot-notes himself, but, on account of his departure for America, he was unable to fulfil his promise. I am greatly indebted to Professor Nilmoni Chakravarti, M.A., my colleague at the Presidency College, who has very kindly identified and transliterated the Sanskrit terms. He has always helped me ungrudgingly.

I cannot conclude, without thanking Shams-ul-'ulamā Dr. M. Hidāyat Husain, my teacher and colleague, who has helped me throughout and has always been willing to lay at my disposal his vast store of knowledge regarding Islāmic bibliography and *Kur'ānic* literature. I am also indebted to Khān Ṣāhib 'Abdul Wali (who is, unfortunately, no longer alive) and Mawlāwī Sayyid Muḥammad Tāhir, M.A., for their kind assistance.

My thanks are also due to Mr. A. H. Harley, M.A., Principal

Islamia College, Calcutta, and Dr. G. Kar, M.A., Ph.D., of the City College, Calcutta, who kindly revised the proof of the Introduction and the Translation.

Finally, I thank Mr. Johan van Manen, F.A.S.B., the Secretary of the Asiatic Society of Bengal, for his many valuable suggestions and for securing me the permission of the Society for the publication of this work in the *Bibliotheca Indica Series*.

M. MAHFUZ-UL-HAQ.

PRESIDENCY COLLEGE :

*Calcutta.*

*December 1, 1928*

**TRANSLATION.**

## SYNOPSIS OF CONTENTS.

1. Discourse on the Elements ('*Anāṣir*).
2. „ on the Senses (*Hawāss*).
3. „ on the Devotional Exercises (*Ashghāl*).
4. „ on the Attributes of God, the Most High (*Ṣifāt-i-Allāh Ta'ālā*).
5. „ on the Soul (*Rūḥ*).
6. „ on the Air (*Bād*).
7. „ on the Four Worlds ('*Awālim-i-Arba'a*).
8. „ on Sound (*Āwāz*).
9. „ on Light (*Nūr*).
10. „ on the Vision of God (*Rūyat*).
11. „ on the Names of God, the Most High (*Asmāi Allāh Ta'ālā*).
12. „ on Apostleship and Saintship (*Nubuwwat wa Wilāyat*).
13. „ on *Barhmānd*.
14. „ on the Directions (*Jihāt*).
15. „ on the Skies (*Āsmānhā*).
16. „ on the Earth (*Zamīn*).
17. „ on the Divisions of the Earth (*Ḳisimat-i-Zamīn*).
18. „ on the World of *Barzakh* (i.e. *Interval between the Death of a Man and the Resurrection*).
19. „ on the Resurrection (*Ḳiyāmat*).
20. „ on *Mukt* (Salvation).
21. „ on Day and Night (*Rūz wa Shab*).
22. „ on the Infinity of the Cycles.

## TRANSLATION.

“In the name of One who hath no name. With whatever name thou callest Him, He uplifteth His Head.”

Abundant praise be (showered) on the Incomparable One, who has manifested on His beautiful, unparalleled and matchless face the two parallel locks of Faith (*Imān*) and Infidelity (*Kufr*), and by neither of them has He covered His beautiful face.

### Verses :

“Faith and Infidelity, both are galloping on the way towards Him,

And are exclaiming (together) : He is One and none shares His kingship.”<sup>1</sup>

He is manifest in all ; and everything has emanated from Him. He is the first and the last and nothing exists, except Him.

### Quatrain :

“The neighbour, the companion and the co-traveller is He,  
In the rags of beggars and the raiments of kings, is He,  
In the conclave on high and the secret chamber below,  
By God, He is all and, verily by God, He is all.”<sup>2</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> This verse is quoted from the *Ḥadīḥat-ul-Ḥaḥīḥat* of Ḥakīm Saḥīḥī Qhasnawī. Dārī Shikūh also has written a quatrain which bears a close affinity in meaning to the above verse of Saḥīḥī.

“We have not seen a single particle of dust separate from the sun.

(And) every drop of water is the sea in itself.

With what name one should call the Truth ?

(For) whatever name there is, it is one of the names of God.

*Jāmī* also has a similar quatrain :

“At times we call Thee wine and next the wine-cup,

(And) at times we call Thee grain and then a snare :

There is nothing except Thy name on the tablet of the earth

Now, with what name should we call Thee ?

<sup>2</sup> It appears from the *Darbār-i-Akbarī* of Mawlawī Muḥammad Ḥusain Āṣād (p. 492) that Abul Faḥl had this verse inscribed on a building which Akbar had built for the common use of the Hindūs and the Musalmāns.

<sup>3</sup> This is one of the quatrains of *Jāmī*. Dārī also quotes it in his *Ḥasənāt-ul-Ārifīn* in connection with the *Shāḥītyāt* of the poet.

And unlimited benedictions be upon the complete manifestation, the cause of the creation of the universe—Muḥammad, may peace be on him and his exalted descendants and great companions. Now, thus sayeth this unafflicted, unsorrowing *fakīr*, Muḥammad Dārā Shikūh, that, after knowing the Truth of truths and ascertaining the secrets and subtleties of the true religion of the Ṣūfīs and having been endowed with this great gift (i.e., Ṣūfistic inspiration), he thirsted to know the tenets of the religion of the Indian monotheists; and, having had repeated intercourse and (continuous) discussion with the doctors and perfect divines of this (i.e. Indian) religion who had attained the highest pitch of perfection in religious exercises, comprehension (of God), intelligence and (religious) insight, he did not find any difference, except verbal, in the way in which they sought and comprehended Truth. Consequently, having collected the views of the two parties and having brought together the points—a knowledge of which is absolutely essential and useful for the seekers of Truth—he (i.e. the author) has compiled a tract and entitled it *Majma'-ul-Bahrain* or “The Mingling of the Two Oceans,” as it is a collection of the truth and wisdom of two Truth-knowing (*Ḥaq Shinās*) groups. The great (mystics) have said: “*Taṣawwuf* is equity and (further) *Taṣawwuf* is the abandonment of (religious) obligations.” So, one who is just and discerning will at once understand that in ascertaining these points how deeply I had to think. It is certain that discerning, intelligent persons will derive much pleasure from this tract (*Risāla*), while persons of blunt intelligence, of either side, will get no share of its benefits. I have put down these researches of mine, according to my own intuition and taste, for the benefit of the members of my family and I have no concern with the common folk of either community. As, Khwāja Aḥrār,<sup>1</sup> may his secrets be sanctified, has said, “If I know that an infidel, immersed in sin, is, in a way, singing the note of Monotheism, I go to him, hear him and am grateful to him.”

And from God comes grace and help !

---

<sup>1</sup> Khwāja Nāṣiruddīn ‘Ubaidullāh, better known as Khwāja Aḥrār, was a great *Nāṣḥbandī* mystic. He was born in 806 A.H. and lived for the greater part of his life at Samarḳand where he died on the 29th *Rabī’ I*, 895 A.H. ‘Alī b. Ḥusain al-Wā‘iṣ al-Kāshifī in his *Raḥḥat* deals, principally, with the life and teachings of the Khwāja. (See *Nāṣḥat-ul-Uṣṣ*, Nawal Kīshūr edition, p. 394.) Dārā Shikūh quotes the above saying, attributed to Khwāja Aḥrār, on p. 39 of his *Ḥasanāt-ul-‘Arīfīn*.



I. DISCOURSE ON THE ELEMENTS ('*Anāṣir*).

Know that the elements are five in number and that these five alone form the constituents of all the mundane creations—*First*, “the great element”, (*‘Unṣur-i-A‘zam*), which the men of Faith (*Shar‘*) call “*‘Arsh-i-Akbar*”, or, the “great throne”; *Secondly*, the wind; *Thirdly*, the fire; *Fourthly*, the water and *Fifthly*, the dust. And, in the Indian language these are called *Pāñch Bhūt*<sup>1</sup>, namely, *akās*<sup>2</sup>, *bā‘i*<sup>3</sup>, *tej*<sup>4</sup>, *jal*<sup>5</sup>, and *pirthi*<sup>6</sup>. (Now) there are three *akās*: *bhūt akās*<sup>7</sup>, *man akās*<sup>8</sup>, and *chid akās*<sup>9</sup>; and (of these) *bhūt akās* is surrounding the elements, *man akās* is encircling the whole existence and *chid akās* is enveloping all and is covering everything. This *chid akās* is permanent, namely, it is not transitory and there is no Qur’anic or Vedic verse (which is a revealed book) testifying to its annihilation or destruction. The first thing to come out of *chid akās* was Love (or *‘Ishk*), which is called *māyā*<sup>10</sup> in the language of the Indian monotheists; and “I was a hidden treasure, then I desired to be known; so, I brought the creation into existence”—this is a proof of the above statement. From *‘Ishk* (Love), (*Rūh-i-A‘zam*) *jīv ātmān*<sup>11</sup>, the great soul was born, by which is understood a reference to the soul of Muḥammad and (further) to the “complete soul” of the Chief (of the Faithful)—may peace be on him and salutation. And the Indian monotheists name him *Hiran Garbha*<sup>12</sup> and *Avasthāt*<sup>13</sup>, which denote his greatness. After that comes the element (*unṣur*) of wind, which is said to be the breath of the Merciful (*Rahmān*) from which springs air mundane. At the time of breathing it came out hot, on account of its confinement in His August Self, fire came out of air; and, as the same breath possessed the qualities of mercy and unity, it became cold and, as such, water was created from fire. And as, on account of their great purity, the elements of air and fire are hardly perceptible and as water is more perceptible than either, some have held that, water was created first, followed by the element of dust. This dust is likened to the froth of that water and resembles the milk which, when put on fire, boils and froths.

<sup>1</sup> *Pañca bhūta.*<sup>2</sup> *Ākāśa.*<sup>3</sup> *Vāyu.*<sup>4</sup> *Tejas.*<sup>5</sup> *Jala.*<sup>6</sup> *Pṛthivi.*<sup>7</sup> *Bhūtāḥkāśa.*<sup>8</sup> *Manāḥkāśa.*<sup>9</sup> *Chidākāśa.*<sup>10</sup> *Māyā.* See p. 6, ni.<sup>11</sup> *Jīvātman.*<sup>12</sup> *Hiraṇyagarbha.*<sup>13</sup> *Avasthātman.*

(Quite) unaware was I that this limitless ocean would be such,  
That its vapour would turn out to be the sky and its foam would  
become the earth.

Next :

An egg-like drop heaved and was turned into an ocean,  
Its foam produced the earth and its smoke gave rise to the sky.

And, as against this, on the day of the Great Resurrection, which the Indians call *mahā parī* <sup>1</sup>, the dust will be destroyed first, being swallowed by water ; water being dried up by fire ; fire being extinguished by air and air being merged in *mahā akāś* <sup>2</sup> together with *Rūh-i-A'zam* (or, 'the Great Soul') :

"Everything is perishable but His face (i.e. He) <sup>3</sup>." (And) "Everyone on it must pass away. And there will endure the face (i.e. the person) of thy Lord, the Lord of Glory and Honour <sup>4</sup>." So, the exception of *wajh* (or, His face) found in the above two verses, which purport to deal with the destruction of everything, points (unmistakably) to *mahā akāś*, which does not admit of annihilation. And had it not been so, He would have said : "Everything is to be annihilated except Him"; but the specification of 'face' (found in the above verse) cannot but apply to *mahā akāś* which constitutes the fine body of the Holy Self. Now, in the Indian language, earth is called *divī*, from which everything has been created and unto which everything will return ; and, as stated in the Holy verse, : "From it We created you and into it We shall send you back and from it will We raise you a second time <sup>5</sup>."

## II. DISCOURSE ON THE SENSES (*Hawāse*).

Corresponding to these five elements, there are five senses called *Panj Indri* <sup>6</sup>, in the Indian language. They are : (1) *Shāmma* (smelling) ; (2) *Dhā'ika* (tasting) ; (3) *Bāṣira* (seeing) ; (4) *Sāmi'a* (hearing) and (5) *Lāmisā* (touching), which are called *gahrān* <sup>7</sup>, *rasnā* <sup>8</sup>, *chach* <sup>9</sup>, *sarutar* <sup>10</sup> and *tvak* <sup>11</sup> respectively, in the Indian language, and their qualities of perception are named *gandhā* <sup>12</sup>, *ras* <sup>13</sup>, *rūp* <sup>14</sup>, *śabd* <sup>15</sup> and *spars* <sup>16</sup>. Each

<sup>1</sup> *Mahāpralaya*.

<sup>2</sup> *Mahākāśa*.

<sup>3</sup> *Qur'an*, Chapt. XXVIII : 88.

<sup>4</sup> *Qur'an*, Chapt. LV : 26.

<sup>5</sup> *Qur'an*, Chapt. XX : 55.

<sup>6</sup> *Pañca indriyāni*.

<sup>7</sup> *Ghrāṇa* (nose).

<sup>8</sup> *Rasnā* (tongue).

<sup>9</sup> *Chakṣuḥ* (eye).

<sup>10</sup> *Śrotra* (ear).

<sup>11</sup> *Tvak* (skin).

<sup>12</sup> *Gandha* (smell).

*Rasa* (taste).

<sup>14</sup> *Rūpa* (colour).

<sup>15</sup> *Śabda* (sound).

<sup>16</sup> *Sparsa* (touch) .

of these five senses is of the same genus as one of those elements and is also allied to them. Thus, the sense of smell is allied with dust; for the reason that none of the elements, except dust, possesses smell which is perceived only by *Shāmma* (or, the sense of smelling); *Dhā'ika*, (or, the sense of taste), is connected with water—(the taste of) water being perceived with our tongue; *Bāṣira*, (or, the sense of sight), is connected with fire and, as such, colour is perceived by the eyes only, while luminosity is present in both; *Līmisa*, (or, the sense of touch), is connected with air, as the perception of all tangible things is through the air; (finally), *Sāmi'a*, (or, the sense of hearing), is connected with 'the great element' ('*Unṣur-i-A'zam*), namely *mahā akās*<sup>1</sup>, through whose instrumentality we hear sounds. And it is through the sense of hearing that the real essence of *mahā akās* is manifested to the religious devotees, (*Ahl-i-Dil*), only, while no one else can realise it. Such exercise is common to the Ṣūfis and the Indian monotheists; the former naming it, *Shahī-i-Pās-i-Anfās*<sup>2</sup>, (or, the exercise of controlling the breath), and the latter calling it *dhun*<sup>3</sup> in their own phraseology.

Now, the internal senses also are five in number: *Muṣhtarak* (Common); *Mutakhayyila* (Imaginary); *Mutafakkira* (Contemplative); *Hāfiẓa* (Retentive) and *Wāhima* (Fancying); but in the Indian system, however, they are four in number, namely, *budh*<sup>4</sup>, *man*<sup>5</sup>, *aḥankār*<sup>6</sup> and *chit*<sup>7</sup>—a combination of which is called *antah karan*<sup>8</sup> and this, in its turn, may be looked upon as the fifth. Now, *chit* is possessed of a characteristic, called *sat parkarat*<sup>9</sup>, which is like its leg and, if cut, *chit* is prevented from running. (Of the above), (1) *Budh*, namely, understanding, possesses the characteristic of moving towards good and avoiding evil; (2) *Man*, or mind, possesses the two characteristics of *sankalp*<sup>10</sup> and *pakalp*<sup>11</sup>, namely, of determination and abandonment (doubt) (3) *Chit*, which, as the messenger of mind, is entrusted with the duty of running on all sides; does not possess the faculty of distinguishing between right and wrong; (4) *aḥankār*, which attributes things to itself, is one of the qualities

<sup>1</sup> *Mahākāśa*.

<sup>2</sup> There is a Persian tract entitled *Risāla-i-Pās-i-Anfās*, attributed to the authorship of *Jāmi*, in the Bodleian Library. (See *Catalogue of Persian MSS.* by Sachau and Ethé, p. 758.)

<sup>3</sup> *Dhyāna*.

<sup>4</sup> *Buddhi*.

<sup>5</sup> *Manas*.

<sup>6</sup> *Ahaṅkāra*.

<sup>7</sup> *Cit*.

<sup>8</sup> *Antahkaraṇa*.

<sup>9</sup> *Satprakti*.

<sup>10</sup> *Sankalpa*.

<sup>11</sup> *Vikalpa*.

of *paramātmā*, for the reason that it possesses *māyā*, which, in their phraseology, is the name given to 'love.'<sup>1</sup> Now *Ahankār* again is subdivided into three : *Sātag*,<sup>2</sup> *Rājas*,<sup>3</sup> and, *Tāmas*.<sup>4</sup> First, *Ahankār Sātag*, or *Gayān Surūp*,<sup>5</sup> is the high stage when *param ātmā* says : " Whatever there is is I"—such is the stage of complete encircling of everything : " Now surely He encompasses all things." <sup>6</sup> Another (Holy Verse) says : *He is the First and the Last and the Ascendant (over all) and the Knower of hidden things.*" <sup>7</sup> Secondly, *Ahankār Rājas*, is *maddhim*,<sup>8</sup> namely the middle stage, when (a religious devotee) having fixed his eyes on *jiv ātmān*<sup>9</sup> says : " My self is free from (the limitations of) body and elements, and corporeality has no access to me." " Nothing is like a likeness of Him" <sup>10</sup> (And) " Then surely Allāh is Self-sufficient, above any need of the worlds." <sup>11</sup> Thirdly, *Ahankār Tāmas* is *adham*,<sup>12</sup> or the low stage of *awiddiyā*,<sup>13</sup> namely of servitude to the August Self ; and its inferiority is due to the fact that a man, on account of his great degradation, limitation and subjectivity, attributes folly, ignorance and carelessness to himself and, having an eye on his sense existence, speaks out in such a manner that, as a result of it, " I " and " Thou " are rent apart from their point of unity. " Say : I am only a mortal like you." <sup>14</sup> Consequently, *Bāshist*<sup>15</sup> says that when the Lord desired to be determined, He was transformed into *param ātmā* immediately on His thinking of it ; and, on the increase of this determination, the stage of *ahankār* was attained and, when a second determination was added to it, it got the name of *mahātat*<sup>16</sup> or " *Aḅi-i-Kul* " (Perfect Wisdom). Now, *man*<sup>17</sup>, or mind, which is also styled *parakart*,<sup>18</sup> was created from *sankalp*<sup>19</sup> and *mahātat* ; and from *sankalp man*, the five *Gayān-i-Indrī*<sup>20</sup>, namely, (the senses of) smell, touch, seeing, hearing and taste, were created ; and, from a combination of *sankalp* and the five *Gayān-i-Indrī*, the limbs and bodies were created,

<sup>1</sup> I am told by certain Sanskrit scholars that *māyā* does not mean "love," as stated by Dārā Shikūh, but it means 'the inscrutable power of *paramātmā* which produces appearances.'

<sup>2</sup> *Sattva.*

<sup>3</sup> *Rūjas.*

<sup>4</sup> *Tāmas.*

<sup>5</sup> *Jāñnasvarūpa.*

<sup>6</sup> *Ḳur'ān*, Ch. XLI : 54.

<sup>7</sup> *Ḳur'ān*, Ch. LVII : 3.

<sup>8</sup> *Madhyama* .

<sup>9</sup> *Jivātman.*

<sup>10</sup> *Ḳur'ān*, Ch. XLII : 41.

<sup>11</sup> *Ḳur'ān*, Ch. III : 96.

<sup>12</sup> *Adhama.*

<sup>13</sup> *Avidyā.*

<sup>14</sup> *Ḳur'ān* : Ch. XVIII : 110.

<sup>15</sup> *Vasiṣṭha.*

<sup>16</sup> *Mahattatva.*

<sup>17</sup> *Manas.*

<sup>18</sup> *Prakṛti.*

<sup>19</sup> *Sankalpa.*

<sup>20</sup> *Jāñnendriya.*

which, in their combined form, are named *badan*, or body. So, *Param-ātmā*—who is called *Abul-Arwāh* has enforced by His Own will all these limitations on Himself and has tied Himself to these; and, just as a silk-worm, having brought out threads of silk from its own spittle, confines itself to them, so our Lord has created all these imaginary limitations for Himself and has confined Himself to them; or, just as the seed of a tree having produced a plant out of itself, enters the tree and remains in the branches and the leaves and the flowers of the tree, (so our Lord has confined Himself in this world). Thus, know and be mindful (of the fact) that before its creation, this world of ours was concealed in His Self and now His Holy Self is concealed in the world.<sup>1</sup>

### III. DISCOURSE ON THE DEVOTIONAL EXERCISES (*Ashghāl*).

Although, according to the Indian monotheists, there are several kinds of devotional exercises, yet they regard *ajpa*<sup>2</sup> as the best of all. This exercise originates from every living being, both in sleep and wakefulness, without any will or control, at every moment—and always. Consequently, the Holy verse, : “ *And there is not a single thing but glorifies Him with His praise, but you do not understand their glorification* ”<sup>3</sup>, refers to this very fact. The incoming and outgoing of breath have been interpreted in two words—the breath that comes out is called *Ū* (اُ i.e. He) and the breath that goes in is named *Man* (من i.e. I); and (their combination) “ *Ū manam* ” (او منم) means “ He is I.” The *Šūfis* consider their occupation in these two words as *Hū Allāh* (i.e. He is God)—*Hū* appearing while the breath comes in and *Allāh* when it goes out. And these words are being uttered by every living being, without his being conscious of the fact.

### IV. DISCOURSE ON THE ATTRIBUTES OF GOD, THE MOST HIGH (*Šifāt-i-Allāh Ta'ālā*).

According to the *Šūfis*, there are the two divine attributes of Beauty (*Jamāl*) and Majesty (*Jalāl*), which encircle the whole creation, while,

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Sa'duddīn Maḥmūd *Shabistari's Gulshan-i-Rāz*, where he says: “ Is not, after all, the Necessary Being a part of Existence? For (now) Existence has concealed His Self! ”

<sup>2</sup> *Ajapā*.

<sup>3</sup> *Kur'ān*, Ch. XVII: 44.

according to Indian devotees, there are three attributes (of God), collectively called *tirgun*<sup>1</sup>; or *sat*<sup>2</sup>, *raj*<sup>3</sup> and *tam*<sup>4</sup>, which mean Creation, Duration, and Destruction; the Śūfis, (on the other hand), viewing, and accepting the quality of Duration as the attribute of Beauty (or, *Jamāl*). But, as these attributes are included in one another, the Indian devotees name them *tirmūrat*<sup>5</sup>, or *Barhmā*<sup>6</sup>, *Biḥun*<sup>7</sup> and *Mahīsh*<sup>8</sup>, who are identical with *Jibra'il*, *Mikā'il* and *Isrāfil* of Śūfi phraseology. *Barhmā*, or *Jibra'il*, is the (superintending) angel of Creation; *Biḥun*, or *Mikā'il*, is the angel of Duration (or Existence); *Mahīsh*, or *Isrāfil* is the angel of Destruction. Now, water, wind and fire are also allied with these (superintending) angels—thus water goes with *Jibra'il*, fire with *Mikā'il* and air with *Isrāfil*: and these three things (i.e. water, fire and air) are manifest in all living beings. Thus, *Barhmā*, who appears as the water (or, moisture) of the tongue, is the cause of Divine utterance and is (further) the source of the power of speech; *Biḥun*, who is (like) fire in the eyes, is the source of light, refulgence and eyesight; *Mahīsh*, who is the air in the nostrils, is instrumental in creating the two blowing horns, namely the two breaths, which, if cut off (or stopped), lead to death.

Now, *tirgun*, which constitutes the three Divine attributes of Creation, Duration and Destruction, is manifested through *Barhmā*, *Biḥun* and *Mahīsh*, whose attributes (in their turn) are manifest in all the creations of the world. (Thus), when a creature is born, it lives for an appointed period and then it is annihilated. *Shakt*, or the potential power of the (above) three attributes is called *tirdivī*.<sup>9</sup> Now, *tirmūrat*<sup>10</sup> gave birth to *Barhmā*, *Biḥun* and *Mahīsh*, while *tirdivī* was the mother of these three: *Sarasī*<sup>11</sup>, *Pārbatī*<sup>12</sup> and *Lakṣmī*.<sup>13</sup> (Of the latter) *Sarasī* is connected with *Rajūgun*<sup>14</sup> and *Barhmā*, *Pārbatī* with *Tamūgun*<sup>15</sup> and *Mahīsh* and *Lakṣmī* with *Satūgun*<sup>16</sup> and *Biḥun*.

## V. DISCOURSE ON THE SOUL (*Rūh*).

The soul is of two kinds: (i) a (common) soul and (ii) the Soul of souls, (*Abul-Arwāh*), which are called *ātmā* and *paramātmā*, respectively, in the

---

1 <i>Triguṇa.</i>	2 <i>Sattva.</i>	3 <i>Rajas.</i>	4 <i>Tamas.</i>
5 <i>Trimūrti.</i>	6 <i>Brahmā.</i>	7 <i>Viṣṇu.</i>	8 <i>Mahāvara.</i>
9 <i>Tridevi.</i>	10 <i>Trimūrti.</i>	11 <i>Sarasvatī.</i>	12 <i>Pārvatī.</i>
13 <i>Lakṣmī.</i>	14 <i>Rajoguṇa.</i>	15 <i>Tamoguṇa.</i>	16 <i>Satvaguṇa.</i>

phraseology of the Indian divines. When the ' Pure Self ' (*Dhāt-i-Baht*) becomes determinate and fettered, either in respect of purity or impurity, He is known as *rūh* (soul), or *ātmā*, in His elegant aspect and *jasd* (body), or *sarīr*,<sup>1</sup> in His in-elegant aspect. And the self that was determined in Eternity Past is known as *Rūh-i-A'zam* (or, the Supreme Soul) and is said to possess uniform identity with the Omniscient Being. Now, the Soul in which all the souls are included is known as *paramātmā* or *Abul-Arwāh* (i.e. the Soul of Souls). The inter-relation between water and its waves is the same as that between body and soul or as that between *sarīr* and *ātmā*. The combination of waves, in their complete aspect, may (very aptly) be likened to *Abul-Arwāh* or *paramātmā*; while water only is (just) like the August Existence, or *sudh*<sup>2</sup> or *chītan*.<sup>3</sup>

#### VI. DISCOURSE ON THE AIR (*Bād*).

As the air, which moves within the human body, remains in five places, so, it has got five names, namely *parān*,<sup>4</sup> *apān*,<sup>5</sup> *samān*,<sup>6</sup> *udān*<sup>7</sup> and *vayān*.<sup>8</sup> (1) *Parān*, which is the movement of air from the nostrils up to the toes, possesses the characteristic of breathing. (2) *Apān*, whose movement is from the buttocks up to the special organ, is encircling the navel, and is, moreover, the cause of life. (3) *Samān* moves inside the breast and the navel. (4) *Udān* moves from the throat up to the top of the brain (or, *the duramater*). (5) (Lastly), *Vayān*, (is that air) which is penetrating everything, whether manifest or hidden.

#### VII. DISCOURSE ON THE FOUR WORLDS (*'Awālim-i-Arba'a*).

According to certain Sūfis, the worlds, through which all the created beings must needs pass, are four in number, (that is), *Nāsūt* (the Human World), *Malakūt* (the Invisible World); *Jabarūt* (the Highest World) and *Lāhūt* (the Divine World); but, according to others, they are five in all—the World of Similitude (*'ālam-i-mithāl*) being added to them. And those who consider the world of Similitude as identical with the Invisible world, regard them (i.e. the worlds) as consisting of four only. According to the Indian divines, the *Avasthāt*,<sup>9</sup> which term applies to these four worlds, consists of four (only), namely, *Jāgart*,<sup>10</sup> *Sapan*.<sup>11</sup>

---

• 1 *Sarīra*.    2 *Suddha*.    3 *Osāna*.    4 *Prāṇa*.    5 *Apāna*.    6 *Samāna*.  
 7 *Udāna*.    8 *Vyāna*.    9 *Avasthātman*.    10 *Jāgrat*.    11 *Swapna*.

*Sakhūpat*<sup>1</sup> and *Turyā*.<sup>2</sup> (Of these), (1) *Jāqarī* is identical with *Nāsūt* (or, the Human World), which is the world of manifestation and wakefulness; (2) *Sapan*, which is identified with *Malākūt* (or, the Invisible World), is the world of souls and dreams; (3) *Sakhūpat* is identical with *Jabarūt*, (or, the Highest World), in which the traces of both the worlds disappear and the distinction between "I" and "Thou" vanishes—whether you see it with your eyes open or closed. There are many devotees of both the communities who have no information regarding this world. Accordingly, Sayyid-ut-ṭā'ifa, Ustād Abul Kāsim,<sup>3</sup> (May his soul rest in sanctity) has informed us that he said, "*Taṣawwuf* consists in sitting for a moment without an attendant." The Shaikh-ul-Islām<sup>4</sup> asked, "What does 'without an attendant' mean?" He explained "(It means) finding without seeking and beholding without seeing, for the (employment of) eyes in beholding (God) is an infirmity. So, 'sitting without an attendant' means that the marks of the Human World ('*ālam-i-nāsūt*) and of the Invisible World ('*ālam-i-malakūt*) may not enter the mind (of the beholder.)" And, Mawlānā-i-Rūm, (May God hallow his grave), has also hinted at the same point:

"If thou desirest to find him, then do not seek for a moment,  
(And) if thou wishest to know Him, then do not know for a moment.

When thou seekest Him secretly, thou art far from His manifestation,

And when thou seekest Him openly, thou art hidden from His secrets.

<sup>1</sup> *Suṣupti*.

<sup>2</sup> *Turiya*.

<sup>3</sup> Abul Kāsim b. Muḥammad b. al-Junaid al-Kharrās al-Kawāriri, the great mystic of Baghdād was a nephew of Sari as-Sakaṭi and a pupil of ash-Shāhī. He died at Baghdād in 297 A.H. (910 A.D.). See Jāmī's *Nafaḥāt*, p. 81. The saying, ascribed here to Junaid, is quoted, with Shaikh-ul-Islām's explanation, on p. 82 of Jāmī's *Nafaḥāt*. It appears that Dārī himself considered the above 'saying' as very important, for in three of his works i.e. *Risāla-i-Ḥaḥ Numā* (p. 21); *Ḥasanāt-ul-ʿArīfin* (fol. 18 b of A.S.B. copy No. III 10) and *Sakinat-ul-Awliyā* (p. 46 of Urdu translation), he quotes that in full.

<sup>4</sup> Shaikh-ul-Islām Abū Ismāʿīl ʿAbdullāh b. Muḥammad al-Anṣārī al-Harawī was born on the 2nd Shābān 396 A.H. (1006 A.D.) He is the author of several Ṣūfī works but his fame mainly rests on his extremely popular *Munāẓāt*. His lectures on the life and doctrines of the Ṣūfīs, which were embodied in a book and entitled *Ṭabaqāt-i-ʿAbdullāh Anṣārī*, form one of the main sources of Jāmī's *Nafaḥāt*. (For details see J.A.S.B., 1922, pp. 385-391). He died in 481 A.H. (1088 A.D.).



And when thou comest out of the hidden and the manifest,  
so, undoubtedly,  
Stretch thy legs and sleep comfortably in His protection.

(Now) (4) *Turyā* is identical with *Lāhūt*, (or, the World of Divinity), which is (identical with) Pure Existence, encircling, including and covering all the worlds. If a person journeys from the *Nāsūt* (or, the Human World) to the *Malakūt* (or, the Invisible World) and from *Malakūt* to the *Jabarūt* (or the Highest World) and from this last to the *Lāhūt* (or, the World of Divinity), this will be considered as a progress, on his part. But, if the Truth of Truths, whom the Indian monotheists call *avasani*<sup>1</sup>, descends from the stage of *Lāhūt* (or, Divinity) to that of *Malakūt* (Invisibility) and thence to *Jabarūt* (or, the Highest Heaven), His journey terminates in *Nāsūt* (or, the World of Humanity). And the fact that certain *Ṣūfis* have described the stages of descent as four, while others as five, is a reference to this (very) fact.

### VIII. DISCOURSE ON SOUND (*Āwz*).

Sound emanates from the same breath of the Merciful which came out with the word *Kun*<sup>2</sup>, (or, Be), at the time of the creation (of the universe). The Indian divines call that sound *Sarasī*, which, (they say), is the source of all other sounds, voices, and vibrations :

“ Wherever thou hearest, it is His melodious voice,  
Who has, after all, heard such a rolling sound !”

According to the Indian monotheists, this sound, which is called *Nād*, is of three kinds. First, *Anāhat*,<sup>3</sup> which has been in Eternity Past, is so at Present, and will be so in Future. The *Ṣūfis* name this sound, *Āwāz-i-Muḥlak* (or, the sound of the Absolute), or *Sulṭān-ul-Adhkar*<sup>4</sup> (i.e. the *Sulṭān* of all devotional exercises). This (sound) is

<sup>1</sup> *Avasāna* (ultimate).

<sup>2</sup> According to Muhammadan belief, the world owes its origin to the Will of God which was expressed by the word *Kun*, or, Be. So runs the Holy verse: “ *Wonderful Originator of the heavens and the earth; and when He decrees an affair, He only says to it, Be, so there it is.*” (*Qur’ān*, Ch. II : 117.)

<sup>3</sup> *Anāhata*.

<sup>4</sup> *Sulṭān-ul-Adhkar*—Among the *Ṣūfis* there is a peculiar exercise of the ‘tuition of the breath’ called *Sulṭān-ul-Adhkar*. It is said to be even more difficult than *Shahī-i-Pās-i-Anās*, which has been discussed before.

eternal and is (also) the source of the perception of *mahā akāś* ; but this sound is inaudible to all, except the great saints of both the communities. *Secondly*, *Āhāt*<sup>1</sup>, or the sound which originates from the striking of one thing against another, without its (i.e. sound's) combination into words. *Thirdly*, *Sabd*<sup>2</sup>, or the sound which emanates together with its formation into words. *Sabd* possesses an affinity with *Sarasī* and is (further) the source of *Ism-i-A'zam*<sup>3</sup> (or, the Great name) of the Musalmāns and the *Bidmukh*<sup>4</sup>, or *Om*<sup>5</sup>, of the Hindu divines. *Ism-i-A'zam* means that He is the possessor of the three attributes of Creation, Preservation and Destruction ; and *Faṭḥa*, *Dhamma* and *Kasra*, which correspond with *akār*<sup>6</sup>, *wukār*<sup>7</sup> and *makār*<sup>8</sup>, have also originated from this (i.e. *Ism-i-A'zam*). They (i.e. the Indian divines) assign a special symbol to this sound, which bears a close resemblance to our *Ism-i-A'zam*, and, in which, traces of the elements of water, fire, air and dust and of the Pure Self are manifest.

#### IX. DISCOURSE ON LIGHT (*Nūr*).

Light (*nūr*) is of three kinds ; if it is manifested with the attribute of *Jalāl* (Majesty), it is either sun-coloured, ruby-coloured, or fire-coloured ; and, if manifested with the attribute of *Jamāl* (Beauty), it is either moon-coloured, pearl-coloured, or water-coloured ; and, (lastly) comes the Light of the Essence which is devoid of all (such) attributes, and is not manifested to any one, except the Holy men in whose favour God (the Most High and Holy) has declared : "*Allāh guides to His light whom He pleases.*"<sup>9</sup>

This is the Light which appears (at the time) when a man, either in sleep or with the eyes closed, neither beholds anything with his eyes nor hears with his ears nor speaks with his tongue nor smells with his nose nor feels with his sense of touch, and, as a matter of fact, performs all these functions, in sleep, with only *one* faculty and does not require the aid of, either the limbs, the external faculties or the light of a lamp ; and the senses of sight, hearing, taste, smell and touch

<sup>1</sup> *Āhāt*.

<sup>2</sup> *Sabda*.

<sup>3</sup> *Ism-i-A'zam* literally means 'the great name' and, undoubtedly, refers to *one* out of the ninety-nine names of God, but as to which of them in particular, it refers is unsettled. Some identify it with *al-Ḥayy-ul-Ḳayyūm* and others with *ar-Raḥmān* and *ar-Raḥīm*.

<sup>4</sup> *Veda-mukha*.

<sup>5</sup> *Om* (see foot-note on p. 15).

<sup>6</sup> *Ākāra*.

<sup>7</sup> *Ukāra*.

<sup>8</sup> *Makāra*.

<sup>9</sup> *Ḳur'ān*, Ch. XXIV : 35.

become merged in one—such is the Light of Essence, or, in other words, the Light of God. Exalted is His Dignity! O my friend! reflect on what I have said, as it is a matter of discernment and meditation. And, the Prophet of God, may His blessings and peace be on him, has said in praise of this reflection that, “A moment’s engagement in meditation is better than the devotion of a whole year”<sup>1</sup> i.e., of the human beings and the fairies. Now, the ‘Light’ discernible from the Holy verse “*Allāh is the light of the heavens and the earths,*”<sup>2</sup> is called *jun surūp*<sup>3</sup>, *ṣavāparakās*<sup>4</sup>, and *sapanparakās*<sup>5</sup> by the Hindus, which (Light) is always effulgent by itself, whether appearing in the world or not. Accordingly, the Ṣūfis have explained *nūr* (Light) by the word *munawwar* (Illumined), and the Hindus also have explained in the same manner. The Holy verse on this point is, as follows: “*Allāh is the light of the heavens and the earth; a likeness of His light is as a niche in which is a lamp, the lamp is in a glass, (and) the glass is as it were a brightly shining star, lit from a blessed olive-tree, neither eastern nor western, the oil whereof almost gives light though fire touches it not—light upon light—Allāh guides to His light whom He pleases.*”<sup>6</sup>

But, what this *ṣakīr* has understood, (from the above-mentioned verse), is that *Miṣkāt* (or, niche) applies to the world of bodily existence, *Miṣbāḥ* (or, the lamp) to the Light of the Essence and *Shīsha* (or, glass) to the (human) soul which is like a shining star and that, on account of this lamp (*miṣbāḥ*); the *Shīsha* (or, glass) also appears like a lamp (or. *Miṣbāḥ*). And: “*That lamp is lit,*” applies to the Light of the Essence; while the “*Sacred tree*” (*Shajar-i-Mubārak*) refers to the Self of the Truth, Holy and Exalted is He, who is free from the limitations of the East and the West. By *Zait* (olive-oil) is meant “the Great Soul” (*Rūh-i-A‘zam*), which is neither of Eternity past nor of Eternity to come, in that the *Zait* is luminous and resplendent by itself, for the reason that it possesses great elegance and purity, and does not require to be lighted. Consequently, *Ustād Abū Bakr Wāsiṭī*<sup>7</sup>, may he be bless-

<sup>1</sup> *Ḥadīth*. *Dak* has quoted this *Ḥadīth* on p. 52 of his *Sakīnat-ul-Awliyā*.

<sup>2</sup> *Kur’ān*, Ch. XXIV: 35.

<sup>3</sup> *Jyotiḥ Svarūpa*.

<sup>4</sup> *Svaparakāśa*.

<sup>5</sup> *Svapnāparakāśa*.

<sup>6</sup> *Kur’ān*, Ch. XXIV: 35.

<sup>7</sup> *Muḥammad b. Mūsā*, called *Abū Bakr al-Wāsiṭī*, was a companion of *Junaid* and *Nūrī*. He died at *Marr* sometime before 320 A. H. According to *Shaiḫ-ul-Islām*, he was the *Imām* of *Tawḥīd* (Divine Unity). See *Nafḥāt* pp. 170. 171 and *Tuḥkirat-ul-Awliyā*, (edited by R. A. Nicholson), pp. 265-281.

ed, says, in defining soul, that the 'glass' of soul is so luminous that it need not be touched with the fire of the Human World (*nār-i-nāst*) and it is imminent that, on account of its inherent potency, it may, automatically, be illumined. This light of *Zait* (olive-oil) is "light upon light" (*nūr-un-'alā nūr*), which signifies that, on account of its extreme purity and brightness, it is light-full of light; and no one can behold Him with this light, unless He guides (and directs) him with the Light of His unity. So the main purport of a combination of all these verses is that God, the Most High and Holy, is manifest, with the Light of His Essence, in elegant and refulgent curtains and there is no veil or darkness concealing Him. Now, the Light of (His) Essence is manifest in the curtain of Soul of Souls (*Abul-Arwāh*), the Soul of Souls in the curtain of Soul (*Rūh*) and the Soul in the curtain of Body—(exactly) in the manner in which the 'lamp' is luminous and manifesting itself within the cover of 'glass'; the glass being placed in a niche (*tāq̄cha*), deriving its illumination from the Light of His Essence and thus adding light to light (*nūr-un-'alā nūr*).

#### X. DISCOURSE ON THE VISION OF GOD (*Rūyat*).

The Indian monotheists call the Vision of God, *Sāchāt̄kār*<sup>1</sup>, that is, to see God with the (ordinary) eyes of the forehead. Know that the Vision of God, either by the Prophets, may peace be on them, or by the perfect divines, may their souls be sanctified, whether in this or the next world and whether with the outer or the inner eyes, cannot be doubted or disputed; and the "men of the Book" (*ahl-i-kitāb*), the perfect divines and the seers of all religions—whether they are believers in the *Qur'an*, the Vedas, the Book of David or the Old and the New Testaments—have a (common) faith in this respect. Now, one who disbelieves the beholding of God is a thoughtless and sightless member of his community, the reason being: if the Holy Self is Omnipotent, how can He not have the potency to manifest Himself? This matter has been explained very clearly by the *'Ulamā* of the Sunnī Sect. But, if it is said, that (even) the Pure Self (*dhāt-i-bāht*) can be beheld, it is an impossibility; for the Pure Self is elegant and undetermined, and, as He cannot be determined, He is manifest in the veil of elegance only, and as such cannot be beheld, and such beholding is an impossibility. And the sug-

<sup>1</sup> *Sāchāt̄kār*.

gestion that He can be beheld in the next and not in this world, is groundless, for if He is Omnipotent, He is potent to manifest Himself in any manner, anywhere and at any time He likes. (I hold) that one who cannot behold Him here (i.e., in this world) will hardly behold Him there (i.e. in the next world); as He has said in the Holy verse : " *And whoever is-blind in this, he shall (also) be blind in the hereafter.*"<sup>1</sup>

The *Mu'tazila*<sup>2</sup> and the *Shi'a*<sup>3</sup> doctors, who are opposed to *rūyat* (Beholding), have committed a great blunder in this matter, for had they only denied the capability of beholding the Pure Self, there would have been some justification, but their denial of all forms of *ruyat* (i.e. Beholding) is a great mistake ; the reason being that most of the Prophets and perfect divines have beheld God with their ordinary eyes and have heard His Holy words without any intermediary and, now, when they are, by all means, capable of hearing the words of God, why should they not be capable of beholding Him ? Verily, they must be so ; and, just as it is obligatory to have faith in God, the Angels, the (revealed) Books, the Prophets, the Destiny, the Good and the Evil, and the Holy Places, etc., so it is obligatory and incumbent to have faith in *rūyat* (Beholding). The unversed Sunni '*Ulamā* who have disputed the

<sup>1</sup> *Kur'ān*, Ch. XVII : 72.

<sup>2</sup> '*Mu'tazala* (lit. the separatists) a sect of Muḥammadans founded by Wāqil ibn 'Aṭā who separated from the school of Ḥasan al-Baṣrī (A.H. 110). The following are their chief tenets : They entirely reject all eternal attributes of God..... They believe the word of God to have been created in subjects ..... They deny all vision of God in Paradise by the corporeal eye, and reject all comparisons and similitudes applied to God..... During the reigns of the 'Abbaaside *Khalifas*, al-Māmūn, al-Mu'taṣim, and al-Wāṭḥik (A.H. 198-228) at Baghdād the *Mu'tazala* were in great favour." (Hughes' *Dictionary of Islam*, p. 425).

<sup>3</sup> *Shi'a* (lit. "followers") is the name given to the "followers" of 'Alī and his descendants, through Fāṭima, the daughter of Prophet Muḥammad. They consider Abū Bakr, 'Umar and 'Uṭṭmān, the first three orthodox Caliphs, as usurpers and regard 'Alī and his eleven descendants as the only rightful *Imāms* or *Khalifas*. They are also called *Iṭṭnā 'aṣḥariya* or *twelveans* as they believe in twelve *Imāms*, namely, 'Alī; al-Ḥasan; al-Ḥusain; 'Alī, surnamed Zain-ul-'Ābidīn; Muḥammad al-Bāqir; Ja'far aṣ-Ṣādiq; Mūsā al-Kāsim; ar-Riḍā; Muḥammad at-Taḳī; 'Alī an-Naḳī; al-Ḥasan al-'Askari; Muḥammad al-Mahdī (who is supposed to re-appear before the day of judgment).

meaning and wording of the tradition—in which 'Ā'ishā Ṣiddīqā<sup>1</sup> asked Prophet (Muḥammad), Peace be on him, : "Didst thou behold thy Lord !" to which the Prophet replied, "It is light that I am beholding" —have read it as نورانى اراد "It is Light, how can I behold it ?" But this (tradition) cannot be an argument against beholding God, for if we put the former interpretation it will refer to His "complete beholding" (*rūyat-i-tām*) in the veil of Light but, if we interpret it as, "It is Light, how can I behold it ?," it will refer to His Pure and Colourless Self. So, it is not a difference in the context but rather a manifestation of the miracle of (our) Prophet who has explained two problems in one tradition. And the Holy verse : "(Some) faces on that day shall be bright, Looking to their Lord"<sup>2</sup> is a clear argument in favour of *rūyat*, (Beholding), of our Lord, Exalted is His Dignity ; (while) the verse : "Vision comprehends Him not, and He comprehends all vision ; and He is the knower of subtilities, the Aware"<sup>3</sup> refers to his colourlessness, that is, the eye cannot behold Him in his Colourless and Absolute capacity, although He beholds all and possesses extreme elegance and colourlessness. And, the word *huwa* (He), found in the above Holy verse, refers to the invisibility of His Pure Self. Now, the beholding of God is of five kinds : *first*, in dream with the eyes of heart ; *secondly*, beholding Him with the ordinary eyes ; *thirdly*, beholding Him in an intermediate state of sleep and wakefulness, which is a special kind of Selflessness ; *fourthly*, (beholding Him) in (a stage of) special determination ; *fifthly*, beholding the One Self in the multitudinous determinations of the internal and external worlds. In such a way beheld our Prophet, may peace be on him, whose 'self' had disappeared from the midst and the beholder and the beheld had merged in one and his sleep, wakefulness and selflessness looked as one and his internal and the external eyes had become one unified whole—such is

---

<sup>1</sup> 'Ā'ishā, the favourite wife of the Prophet, was born between 613 and 614 A.D. She was the daughter of Abū Bakr, the first Caliph, and was married to the Prophet in 623 A.D. She died on the 17th Ramaḍān, 58 A.H., 13th July, 678 A.D. "'Ā'ishā occupies a prominent place amongst the most distinguished traditionists. 1210 traditions are recorded as having been reported by her direct from the mouth of the Prophet. She was often consulted on theological and judicial subjects." (*Encycl. of Islam*, Vol. I, pp. 210, 217.)

<sup>2</sup> *Kur'ān*, Ch LXXV : 22, 23.

<sup>3</sup> *Kur'ān*, Ch. VI : 104.

the state of perfect *rūyat*<sup>1</sup> (Beholding), which is not confined either to this or the next world and is possible everywhere and at every period.

## XI. DISCOURSE ON THE NAMES OF GOD, THE MOST HIGH

(*Asmāi Allāh Ta'ālā*).

Know that the names of God, the Most High, are numberless and beyond comprehension. In the language of the Indian divines, the Absolute, the Pure, the Hidden of the hidden and the Necessary Self is known as *asan*<sup>2</sup>, *tirgun*<sup>3</sup>, *nirankār*<sup>4</sup>, *niranjan*<sup>5</sup>, *sat*<sup>6</sup> and *chit*.<sup>7</sup> If knowledge is attributed to Him, the Indian divines designate Him as *chitan*<sup>8</sup>, while the Muslims call Him 'Alīm (Knowing). For *Al-Haq* (the Truth) they have (the word) *anant*<sup>9</sup>; for *Qādir* (the Powerful) they have *samarth*<sup>10</sup>; for *Samī*' (the Hearer) they have *sarūtā*<sup>11</sup> and for *Baṣīr* (the Beholder) they have *draṣṭā*<sup>12</sup>. If spirit is attributed to that Absolute Self, they call Him *waktā*<sup>13</sup>; *Allāh* (God)

<sup>1</sup> Dārā Shikūh has discussed, in some detail, the question of *Rūyat*, or the vision of God, in his *Sakīnat-ul-Awliyā*, pp. 60-66. He has quoted many authorities in support of his argument, which it is unnecessary to discuss here. I may, however, give a brief summary of the introductory remarks made by Dārā Shikūh :

"One day I asked Miyan Jiv that it is stated in *Nihāya-i-Jazari* that Ibn-i-Shakīk told Abū Dhar-i-Qhaffārī, 'Had I seen Prophet Muḥammad, I must have asked him as to whether he saw God or not'. Abū Dhar-i-Qhaffārī replied 'I had enquired of Prophet, but he replied, "*Nūr-un-anna-arāḥu*" i.e. He is Light, I cannot see Him anyhow. But mark that verbal play (*Tajnis-i-Khaṣṣi*) in the above sentence, for, it may also mean, 'It is light that I am beholding'....."

Now, Ḥajrat Miyan Jiv told Dārā Shikūh that if the first interpretation is put on the words of the Prophet, then it will refer to the Pure Self, and such beholding is an impossibility even for the Prophets; but if the second interpretation is put, then it means that 'He can be seen when he descends and appears in veil or guise.' Dārā Shikūh has summed up his views on the subject of *Rūyat* in the following quatrain which I quote from his *Sakīnat-ul-Awliyā*, (p. 61) :

"Those who will behold God in that (Future) time,

Know that at first they behold Him in this world ;

The vision of God is identical, whether in this or the next (world),

Every moment they see Him, open and secretly."

<sup>2</sup> *Aśaṅga* (?).

<sup>3</sup> *Tṛiguṇa*.

<sup>4</sup> *Nirākāra*.

<sup>5</sup> *Niranjana*.

<sup>6</sup> *Sattva*.

<sup>7</sup> *Chit*.

<sup>8</sup> *Cetana*.

<sup>9</sup> *Ananta*.

<sup>10</sup> *Samartha*.

<sup>11</sup> *Srotā*.

<sup>12</sup> *Draṣṭā*.

<sup>13</sup> *Vyakta*.

they call *um*<sup>1</sup>; *Hū* (He) they call *saḥ*<sup>2</sup> and they designate *Firihta* (i.e. angel) as *dīvatā*<sup>3</sup>, in their language. The 'perfect manifestation' (*mazhar-i-alam*) is called *awtār*<sup>4</sup>, through whom the Majesty of God is manifested in such a way as would not be manifested, in any other individual of his class, in that particular period. *Wahī* (Divine Revelation) which dawns on the Prophets, is called *akās bānī*<sup>5</sup>; and this name (*akās bānī*) is given to it for the reason that our Prophet, may peace be on him, has said: the severest moment for me is that of *Wahī* (or, Divine Revelation), when I hear *Wahī* ringing in my ears like the sound of a bell or the buzzing of wasps; so this voice, descending from heaven, is called *akās bānī*. They call the Heavenly Books *Ved*, and the beautiful ones of the *jins* (Geniis), who are the *parīs*, are called *anchrāntī*<sup>6</sup>, while the evil ones, who are the demons and the devils, are called *rūchas*.<sup>7</sup> *Manukh*<sup>8</sup>, according to them, are the human beings, while *rikhī*<sup>9</sup> is a mystic and *mahā sudh*<sup>10</sup>, an Apostle.

## XII. DISCOURSE ON APOSTLESHIP AND SAINTSHIP (*Nubuwwat wa Wilāyat*).

Apostles may be divided into three classes: *first*, those who might have beheld God either with the outer or the inner eyes; *secondly*, those

<sup>1</sup> *Om*. "O'm a mystic monosyllable or ejaculation by Hindus, which is supposed to be uttered in place of naming the Supreme Being. Hindus, from its awful and sacred meaning, hesitate to pronounce His name aloud, and place one of their hands before their mouths and say O'm! A Brahman beginning or ending a lecture of the Veda (or the recital of any holy strain), must always pronounce to himself the syllable O'm. From various passages in Asiatic Researches, Mr. Colebrooke and other authorities think it may be collected that A. O. M. or A. U. M. is interpreted to signify Brahm, the Supreme Being, under his three great attributes of the creator, the preserver and the destroyer, the letters standing in succession for the attributes as they are described. O'm is also supposed to express the words of the gaytri, a passage in the Veda which is imparted to the youthful Brahman at his initiation into the mysteries of his faith. . . . O'm (A.U.M.) is also imagined to be a monogram of the triad, the initials of Aditi, Varma, and Mitra." (*Cycl. of India*, Vol. iii, p. 21.)    <sup>2</sup> *Saḥ*.    <sup>3</sup> *Devatā*.    <sup>4</sup> *Awatāra*.  
<sup>5</sup> *Ākāśavānī*.    <sup>6</sup> *Apsaras*.    <sup>7</sup> *Rakṣas*.    <sup>8</sup> *Manuṣya*.    <sup>9</sup> *Rīḥī*.

<sup>10</sup> The word *Mahā Sudh* is phonetically equivalent to *Mahā Suddha*, or, "highly pure," which is hardly an epithet for an Apostle.



who might have heard the voice of God, either sound only or sound, composed of words; *thirdly*, those who might have seen the angels or heard their voice.

Now, Apostleship and Saintship is of *three* kinds : (1) Pure (*tanzīhī*) Apostleship ; (2) Resembling (*taḥbīhī*) Apostleship and (3) a combination of Pure and Resembling Apostleships.

*First*, Pure (*tanzīhī*) Apostleship, like which was the Apostleship of Noah, May peace be on him, who beheld God in purity (*tanzīh*) and invited people (to embrace his religion) but, except a few, they did not accept his faith, on account of his (*tanzīh*) ('pure beholding'), and, (as a result), were sunk in the ocean of destruction. Similarly, the divines of our day invite disciples to a 'pure beholding' of God, but none of those disciples ever attains the stage of an 'Ārif, nor is he benefited by their discourses and, dying on the way of *Sulūk* (Journey) and *Tariqat* (Path)<sup>s</sup> never reaches God.

*Secondly*, Resembling (*taḥbīhī*) Apostleship, like the Apostleship of Moses, May peace be on him, who saw God Himself in the fire of the tree and heard words from the clouds. A large section of the followers of Moses, having become Anthropomorphists, began worshipping the cow and committed sin. Now-a-days, some of our followers (*mukallidīn*) whose only profession in life is (blind) following, having fallen aside from purity (*tanzīh*), have been sunk in Anthropomorphism, and, as such, indulge in seeing handsome and attractive faces and (pass their time) in playing and toying. One should never follow such persons.

#### Verses :

" Every heart-attracting face that thou beholdest,  
The sky will soon remove it from before thy eyes ;  
Go, and give thy heart to one, who, in the circle of existence,  
Has remained always with thee and will so continue to be."

*Thirdly*, a combination of Pure (*tanzīhī*) and Resembling (*taḥbīhī*) Apostleships, like the Apostleship of Muḥammad, May peace be on him and salutation, who joined together the Absolute (*muṣṭak*) and the Determined (*mukayyad*), the Colourless and the coloured, the Near and the Distant. There is a reference to this very dignity, in the Holy verse : " Nothing is like a likeness of Him ; and He is the Hearing, the

Seeing." <sup>1</sup> The former, i.e. "Nothing is like a likeness of Him," is a reference to His Purity (*tanzih*) and the latter, i.e. "He is the Hearing, the Seeing," is one to that of Resembling (*tashbih*). This is the highest and the loftiest stage of Universality and Perfection, which was reserved for that lord (Muhammad), Peace be on him. So, our Prophet has encircled the whole world, from (the remotest corner of) the east to the (farthest end) of the west. Now, Pure (*tanzihi*) Apostleship is void of Resembling (*tashbihi*) Apostleship, while Resembling Apostleship (in its turn) is void of Pure Apostleship; but the "Uniting" (*jāmi'*) Apostleship combines both *tanzihi* and *tashbihi* Apostleships; as contained in the Holy verse: "He is the First and the Last and the Ascendant (over all) and the Knower of hidden things." <sup>2</sup> Similarly, Saintsship is limited to the perfect ones of the sect in whose praise God, the Most High, has said: "You are the best of the nations raised up for (the benefit of) men," <sup>3</sup> namely, they are the best of My followers who combine *tanzih* and *tashbih*. Thus, in the time of our Prophet, May peace of God and salutation be on him, there were, among the mystics, Abū Bakr, <sup>4</sup> 'Umar, <sup>5</sup> 'Uthmān, <sup>6</sup> 'Alī, <sup>7</sup> Ḥasan <sup>8</sup> and Ḥusain, <sup>9</sup> the Six *Bāḳi* (*Sitta-i-Bāḳiya*), the ten Congratulated (*'Ashara-i-Mubashshara*) <sup>10</sup> and the great ones of the *muhājir*, <sup>11</sup> the *anṣār* <sup>12</sup> and the *Ṣūfis*.

And in the time of the *Tābi'in* <sup>13</sup> there were (saints) like Uwais-i-Karānī <sup>14</sup> and others; <sup>15</sup> and in another period saints like Dhun Nūn al-Miṣrī <sup>16</sup>, Fuḍail b. 'Iyād <sup>17</sup>, Ma'rūf-i-Karkhī <sup>18</sup>, Ibrāhīm Adham <sup>19</sup>, Biḥr-i-Ḥāfi <sup>20</sup>, Sari as-Saḳāṭī <sup>21</sup>, Bāyazīd-i-Biṣṭāmī <sup>22</sup>, Uṣṭād Abul Kāsim Junaidī <sup>23</sup>, Sahl b. 'Abdullāh at-Tustarī <sup>24</sup>, Ruwaim <sup>25</sup>, Abū Sa'id Kharrāz <sup>26</sup>, Abul Ḥasan an-Nūrī <sup>27</sup>, Ibrāhīm Khawwās <sup>28</sup>, Abū Bakr Ṣhiblī <sup>29</sup>, Abū Bakr Wāsiṭī <sup>30</sup> and others of their type. In another period there were Abū Sa'id Abul Khair <sup>31</sup>, Shaikh-ul-Islām Khwāja 'Abdullāh Anṣārī <sup>32</sup>, Shaikh Aḥmad-i-Jām <sup>33</sup>, Muḥammad Ma'ṣūḳ Tūstī <sup>34</sup>, Aḥmad Ghazzālī <sup>35</sup>, and Abul Kāsim Gurgāni. <sup>36</sup> In another period there were (saints) like my *pīr* (spiritual guide) Shaikh Muḥtuddīn 'Abdul Kādir Jilānī <sup>37</sup>, Abū 'Uthmān al-Maghribī <sup>38</sup>, Shaikh Muḥtuddīn Ibn al-'Arabī <sup>39</sup>, Shaikh Najmuddīn Kubrā <sup>40</sup>, Shaikh Farīduddīn 'Aṭṭār <sup>41</sup> and Mawlānā Jalāluddīn Rūmī. <sup>42</sup> In another period there were Khwāja Mu'inuddīn Chishtī, <sup>43</sup> Khwāja Bahāuddīn Naqshband <sup>44</sup>, Khwāja Aḥrār <sup>45</sup> and Mawlānā 'Abdur

<sup>1</sup> Kur'an, Ch. XLII: 11.

<sup>2</sup> Kur'an, Ch. LVII: 3.

<sup>3</sup> Kur'an Ch. III: 109.

Rahmān Jāmi.<sup>46</sup> In another period there were (saints) like my Shaikh, the second Junaid, Shāh Mir<sup>47</sup>; my teacher Miyan Bārī<sup>48</sup>; my *Murshid* Mullā Shāh<sup>49</sup>; Shāh Muḥammad Dirubā<sup>50</sup>, Shaikh Taiyyib Sarhindi<sup>51</sup>, and Bāwā Lāl Bairāgi.<sup>52</sup>

(Biographical Notes to Section XII.)

<sup>4</sup> Abū Bakr ‘Abdullāh (surnamed ‘Atīq) was the first orthodox Caliph who succeeded Prophet Muḥammad in 632 A.D. He died on the 22nd Jamāda II, 13 A.H. = 23rd August 634, and was buried beside the Prophet.

<sup>5</sup> ‘Umar b. al-Khattāb, the second orthodox Caliph, succeeded Abū Bakr in 13 A.H. (= 634 A.D.). He ruled over the countries of Islām for ten years and was assassinated in 23 A.H., (644 A.D.).

<sup>6</sup> ‘Uthmān b. ‘Affān, the third orthodox Caliph, succeeded ‘Umar on the 1st Muḥarram, 24 A.H. = 7th November, 644 A.D., and was assassinated by some conspirators on the 18th Dhul Hijja, A.H. 35 = June 17th, A.D. 656. He is called Dhun-Nūrain, or “the possessor of two lights,” as he married two of the Prophet’s daughters, Ruḳayya and Umm-i-Kulthūm.

<sup>7</sup> ‘Alī b. Abī Tālib was the fourth orthodox Caliph. He was a cousin and the son-in-law of the Prophet Muḥammad and was among the first few who embraced Islām. He became Caliph on the 25th Dhul Hijja, 35 A.H. = June 23rd, 656 A.D. and died on the 21st Rāmāḍān, 40 A.H. = 27 January, 661 A.D., as a result of wounds inflicted by Ibn-i-Muljāim. He is regarded by the Shī‘as as the only lawful Caliph after the Prophet.

<sup>8</sup> Ḥasan, the eldest son of ‘Alī, and a grandson of Prophet Muḥammad, was born in 3 A.H. He succeeded ‘Alī as Caliph in 40 A.D. and, after a rule of about six months, abdicated in favour of Mu‘āwiya. He was, however, poisoned by his wife Ja‘da, in 49 A.H.

<sup>9</sup> Ḥusain, the second son of ‘Alī and a grandson of Prophet (through Fātima) was born in 4 A.H. He was the rightful successor of Mu‘āwiya, but the latter nominated Yazīd, his son, as successor, who slew Ḥusain, under the most tragic circumstances, at Karbalā, in 61 A.H. The martyrdom of Ḥusain is mourned every year by the whole Muslim world and, more specially, by the Shī‘as, from the 1st to the 10th of Muḥarram.

<sup>10</sup> *Ashara-i-Mubashshara*, or the ten who received the glad tidings, is the title given to ten of the most eminent companions (aḥbāb) of the Prophet, whose entry into Paradise was foretold by Muḥammad. They are: Abū Bakr, ‘Umar, ‘Uthmān, ‘Alī, Tāḥa b. az-Zubair, ‘Abdur Rahmān, Sa‘d b. Abī Waqqās, Sa‘id b. Zaid, Abū ‘Ubaida b. al-Jarrāh.

<sup>11</sup> The *Muājjirin* is the title given to those believers who emigrated to Medina from Mecca.

<sup>12</sup> *al-Anṣār*, (lit. the helpers), or, more explicitly speaking, *Anṣār-un-Nabī*, is the title given to those believers of Medina who received and assisted the Prophet

after his flight from Mecca' (621 A.D.). For details see the *Encycl. of Islam*, Vol. I, pp. 357, 358.

<sup>13</sup> *Tābi'in* (or, "the followers") is, in the language of the *Muḥaddithīn*, or the traditionists, the title of those persons who met and conversed with one of the companions (*aṣṭāb*) of the Prophet.

<sup>14</sup> Uwais al-Karānī, the famous mystic, was a contemporary of Prophet Muḥammad, who, as recorded in *Tadhkirat-ul-Awliyā*, had asked 'Umar and 'Alī to give his i.e. Prophet's *murākka'* to Uwais. Accordingly, 'Umar and 'Alī visited Uwais and gave him the cloak of the Prophet. He died between A.H. 32 and 39 (cf. *Khasinat-ul-Aṣfiyā*, vol. ii, p. 120). (For details see *Tadhkirat-ul-Awliyā* ed. Nicholson, vol. I, pp. 15-24; *Kaḥf-ul-Maḥjūb*, pp. 83, 84; *Safinat-ul-Awliyā*, pp. 30, 31. *Anwār-ul-ʿArifīn* by Muḥ. Ḥusain, pp. 147-148.)

<sup>15</sup> In certain texts the name of Ḥanbal is given. Abū 'Abdullāh Aḥmad b. Ḥanbal, known as Imām Ḥanbal, the founder of the fourth school of Sunnī Jurisprudence, was born in A.H. 164 (= 780 A.D.). He was a favourite pupil of aḥ-*Shāfi'i* and enjoys considerable reputation as a traditionist and theologian. He stubbornly refused to subscribe to the new faith of al-Māmūn that the Qur'ān was created and thereby seriously endangered his life. His death took place at Baghdād, in 241 A.H. (= 855 A.D.), and it is said that 800,000 men and 60,000 women attended his funeral. (For details see *Ibn Khabīkīn*, de Slane's translation, vol. i, p. 44; *Tadhkirat-ul-Awliyā*, Nicholson, vol. I, pp. 214-219; *Khasinat-ul-Aṣfiyā*, vol. I, pp. 64-66.

<sup>16</sup> Dhun Nūn Abul Fī'īd b. Ibrāhīm al-Miṣrī, whose real name was Thawbān, was a pupil of Mālik b. Anas. He lived in Egypt and died at Qhīra, in 245 A.H. = 860 A.D. He is well-known for his piety and sanctity, and Jāmī records several instances of his miraculous acts. His fame, however, mostly rests on the fact that Ṣūfī doctrines were first explained and expressed by him. (For details see *Nafaḥāt*, pp. 32-37; *Tadhkirat-ul-Awliyā*, ed. Nicholson, vol. I, pp. 114-134; *Safinat-ul-Awliyā*, pp. 126, 127; *Kaḥf-ul-Maḥjūb*, tr. Nicholson, (Gibb Memorial Series), pp. 100-103.

<sup>17</sup> Fuḍail b. 'Iyād, with his *Kunya* Abū 'Alī, was a native of Kūfa, or, as stated by some, of Khurāsān. He is a celebrated, early mystic of Islām and died on the 2nd Rabi' I, 187 A.H. (= 803 A.D.). For further particulars see *Nafaḥāt*, pp. 38, 39; *Tadhkirat-ul-Awliyā*, ed. Nicholson, vol. I, 74-85; *Safinat-ul-Awliyā*, pp. 86, 87; *Khasinat-ul-Aṣfiyā*, vol. I, pp. 228-235; *Siyar-ul-ʿArifīn*, pp. 24-29; *Kaḥf-ul-Maḥjūb*, pp. 97-100.

<sup>18</sup> Ma'rūf-i-Karkhī, with his *Kunya* Abū Maḥfūṣ, was the teacher of Sarī as Saḳāṭī. At first he was a magician, but with his father Fīrūz or Fīrūzān accepted Islām at the hands of 'Alī b. Mūsā ar-Riḍā. He died at Baghdād on the 2nd or the 8th Muḥarram, A.H. 200. For further particulars regarding his life and teachings see *Tadhkirat-ul-Awliyā*, ed. Nicholson, vol. I, pp. 269-274; *Nafaḥāt*, pp. 39-40; *Khasinat-ul-Aṣfiyā*, vol. I, pp. 76-78; *Safinat-ul-Awliyā* pp. 35, 36.

<sup>19</sup> Ibrāhīm b. Adham b. Manṣūr b. Yazīd b. Jābir (Abū Ishāq), the famous mystic, was a native of Balkh, where he is said to have ruled as king, but, subse-

quently, due to some sudden impulse, is reported to have abdicated and adopted the life of an ascetic. After his conversion to Šūfism, Ibrāhīm went to Syria where he died between 160 and 166 A.H. (= 776-783 A.D.). For further particulars see *Tadhkirat-ul-Awliyā*, ed. Nicholson, vol. I, pp. 85-106; *Nafahāt*, pp. 42-44; *Khasinat-ul-Ashyā*, vol. I, pp. 231-236; *Siyar-ul-Ak̄tib*, pp. 29-45; *Safinat-ul-Awliyā*, pp. 86, 87.

<sup>9</sup> 20 Bih̄r b. al-Hārith b. ‘Abdūr Raḥmān Ḥāfi, with his *Kunya* Abū Naṣr, is one of the early mystics of Islām. He was an inhabitant of Marv but passed most of his life at Baghdād where he died (according to *Nafahāt*, p. 50) on the 10th Muḥarram, 227 A.H. (= 842 A.D.) For details see *Tadhkirat-ul-Awliyā*, ed. Nicholson, vol. I, pp. 106-114; *Nafahāt*, pp. 50, 51; *Safinat-ul-Awliyā*, p. 124; *Khasinat-ul-Ashyā*, vol. II, pp. 137, 138.

<sup>11</sup> Sarī as-Sakaṭī, with his *Kunya* Abul Ḥasan, was a disciple of Ma‘rūf Karkhī and the teacher of Junaid and other mystics of Baghdād. He died (according to *Nafahāt*, p. 55) on the 3rd Ramadān, 253 A.H. (= A.D. 868). For further particulars see *Tadhkirat-ul-Awliyā*, ed. Nicholson, vol. I, pp. 274-284; *Khasinat-ul-Ashyā*, vol. I, pp. 78-81; *Safinat-ul-Awliyā*, p. 36.

<sup>22</sup> Abū Yazīd Ṭaifūr b. ‘Isā b. Ādam b. Surūḥān, better known as Bāyazīd al-Bisṭāmī, was a great mystic of Bisṭām. He led the life of an ascetic and died in 261 A.H. (= 875 A.D.) or 264 (877-976 A.D.). His fame chiefly rests on his introducing the doctrine of *Fanā* in Muslim mysticism and is also reputed to be a "convinced pantheist." His followers are designated after him as *Ṭaifūriya* or *Bisṭāmiya*. For further particulars see *Nafahāt*, pp. 59-60; *Tadhkirat-ul-Awliyā*, ed. Nicholson, vol. I, pp. 134-179; *Khasinat-ul-Ashyā*, vol. I, pp. 519-522; *Safinat-ul-Awliyā*, pp. 73, 74.

<sup>23</sup> Abul Kāsim b. Muḥammad b. al-Junaid al-Kharrāz al-Kawāriri, also known as *Sayyid-ul-ʿAlīya* and *Ṭāʿūs-ul-ʿUlamā*, was a celebrated mystic of Baghdād. He was a pupil of Abū Ṭhawr, who, in his turn, was a student of aḥ-Ḥakīm. Junaid died at Baghdād in 297 A.H. (= 910 A.D.) and was buried beside his uncle, the well-known Sarī as-Sakaṭī. His followers are called *Junaidis*. For further reference see *Tadhkirat-ul-Awliyā*, ed. Nicholson, vol. II, pp. 5-39; *Nafahāt*, pp. 81-85; *Khasinat-ul-Ashyā*, vol. I, pp. 81-86. *Safinat-ul-Awliyā*, pp. 37-39.

<sup>24</sup> Abū Muḥammad Sahl b. ‘Abullāh b. Yūnus, a well-known mystic, was born at Tustar (al-Ahwān), in 203 A.H. (= 818 A.D.). He was a disciple of Dhun Nūn al-Miqrī and a companion of Muḥammad b. Sawwās, his uncle. Sahl died in exile at Baṣra, in 283 A.H. (= 896 A.D.). His "thousand sayings" were collected by his pupil, Muḥammad b. Sulīm (d. 297 A.H. = 909 A.D.). His followers are called *Sahlis*. For further particulars see *Tadhkirat-ul-Awliyā*, ed. Nicholson, vol. I, pp. 251-268; *Kaḥf-ul-Maḥjūb*, tr. Nicholson, pp. 139, 140 and 195-210; *Nafahāt*, pp. 69-71; *Khasinat-ul-Ashyā*, vol. II, pp. 162-164; *Safinat-ul-Awliyā*, pp. 133, 134.

<sup>25</sup> Abū Muḥammad Ruwaim b. Yazīd was a well-known mystic of Baghdād and a disciple of Junaid. In Jurisprudence he was a follower of DĒʿūd-i-Iṣfahānī,

the founder of the Zahirite School. Of his works, *Qhulaf-ul-Wajidin* has been much appreciated by al-Hujwiri (*Kashf.*, p. 135). He died in 303 A.H. = 914 A.D. For further information refer to *Kashf-ul-Mahjüb*, pp. 135, 136; *Nafahät*, pp. 96-98; *Tadhkirat-ul-Awliyā*, ed. Nicholson, vol. II, pp. 64-67; *Khasinat-ul-Ashiyā*, vol. II, p. 3; *Safinat-ul-Awliyā*, p. 110.

<sup>26</sup> Abū Sa'īd Ahmad b. 'Isā al-Kharrāz was a disciple of Muḥammad b. Maṅṅūr at-Tūsi and a companion of Dhun Nūn, Bisḥr and Sarī. Both, according to Jāmi (*Nafahät*, p. 75) and Hujwiri (*Kashf-ul-Mahjüb*, p. 143), Kharrāz "was the first who explained the doctrine of annihilation (*fanā*) and subsistence (*baqā*)." His followers are known as *Kharrāzi* (see *Kashf.*, pp. 241-246). It is said that he left 400 works on mysticism. He died in 286-287 A.H. = 900 A.D. For further reference see *Tadhkirat-ul-Awliyā*, ed. Nicholson, vol. II, pp. 40-45; *Khasinat-ul-Ashiyā*, vol. II, p. 165; *Safinat-ul-Awliyā*, pp. 134, 135.

<sup>27</sup> Abul Ḥusain Ahmad b. Muḥammad an-Nūrī, was a companion of Junaid and a disciple of Sarī. He was also known by the name of Ibn al-Baghavī as his father hailed from Baghshūr, or Baghthūr (*Khasina*, p. 169), a city between Hirāt and Marv. Nūrī was born at Baghdād and died in 295 A.H. = 907 A.D. His followers are known as *Nūrīs* whose principal doctrine is "to regard Ṣūfism (*tasawwuf*) as superior to poverty (*fakr*)." (See *Kashf.* pp. 189-195.) For further information see *Tadhkirat-ul-Awliyā*, ed. Nicholson, vol. II, pp. 48-55; *Nafahät*, pp. 80, 81; *Kashf-ul-Mahjüb*, pp. 130-132; *Khasinat-ul-Ashiyā*, vol. II, pp. 169-171; *Safinat-ul-Awliyā*, pp. 137, 138.

<sup>28</sup> Abū Ishāk Ibrāhīm b. Ahmad al-Khawwāq, is the author of some "excellent works on the ethics of Ṣūfism." According to some, he was an inhabitant of Baghdād and a companion of Nūrī and Junaid. He died in 291 A.H. = 903-904 A.D. For further particulars see *Kashf-ul-Mahjüb*, tr. Nicholson (Gibb Memorial Series), pp. 153, 154; *Nafahät*, pp. 137-139; *Safinat-ul-Awliyā*, pp. 136, 137; *Khasinat-ul-Ashiyā*, vol. II, pp. 167-169.

<sup>29</sup> Abū Bakr b. Dulaf b. Jahdar ash-Shiblī or Dulaf b. Ja'far was the celebrated disciple of Junaid. According to Jāmi (*Nafahät*, N. Lees' ed., p. 201), he was a Mālikī and learned the *Muwattā* by heart. He died in 334 A.H. = 945 A.D. at the age of 87. For further particulars refer to *Kashf-ul-Mahjüb*, tran. Nicholson, (Gibb Memorial Series), pp. 155, 156; *Tadhkirat-ul-Awliyā*, ed. Nicholson, Vol. II, pp. 160-182; *Safinat-ul-Awliyā*, pp. 39-41; *Nafahät*, pp. 174-178.

<sup>30</sup> See foot-note on p. 13.

<sup>31</sup> Abū Sa'īd Fadlullāh b. Abul Khair, the celebrated *Shaiikh* and author of mystic quatrains, was born at Mahna, a village in the district of Khawārān, on December 7, 967 A.D. According to the author of *Akhlāq-i-Jalālī*, he is said to have come in personal contact with Avicenna. He died on January 2, 1049 A.D. For further particulars see Browne, *Literary History of Persia*, vol. II, pp. 261-269; *Kashf-ul-Mahjüb*, tr. Nicholson, (Gibb Memorial Series), pp. 164-166; *Tadhkirat-ul-Awliyā*, ed. Nicholson vol. II, pp. 322-337; *Nafahät*, pp. 277-282.

<sup>32</sup> *Shaiikh-ul-Islām Khwāja* Abū Isma'īl 'Abdullāh Anṣārī, the well-known

author of the *Munājāt* or "Supplications" and several other Ṣūfī works, was born at Hirāt, on May 4, 1006 A.D. He delivered learned discourses at Hirāt on the life and teachings of the Ṣūfīs, which were embodied in a book, entitled *Ṭabaqāt-i-ʿAbdullāh Anṣārī*, a copy of which is preserved in the Library of the Asiatic Society of Bengal (see Ivanow's Catalogue, pp. 78-83). Anṣārī died in 1088 A.D. For further particulars see Browne, *Literary History of Persia*, vol. II, pp. 269, 270.

<sup>33</sup> *Shaiḫ*-ul-Islām Abū Naṣr Aḥmad b. Abul Ḥasan al-Jāmī, surnamed *Zhandapil*, was born in the district of Jām, in A.H. 441 A.H. = 1049 A.D. He is celebrated as a mystic and the author of some fourteen works on Ṣūfism, of which only five are said to be extant. He also compiled a *Dīwān* which has been lithographed several times in India. His death took place in 536 A.H. = 1141 A.D. For further particulars see K. B. 'Abdul Muḫtadīr's *Catalogue of O.P. Library*; Bankipore, vol. I, pp. 30-32

<sup>34</sup> Muḥammad Ma'ahūḫ at-Ṭūsī had, according to *Kaḫf-ul-Mahjūb*, "an excellent spiritual state and was aglow with love." According to Jāmī, (*Nafaḥāt* p. 284), Abū Sa'īd b. Abul Ḳhair visited him with several of his companions. He was buried at Ṭūs. See *Nafaḥāt*, pp. 283, 284.

<sup>35</sup> *Shaiḫ* Aḥmad al-Ḡhazzālī, the brother of the celebrated Imām al-Ḡhazzālī, is the author of several Sufico-religious works, the principal among them being *Risāla-i-Sawāniḥ*. He died in 517 A.H. See *Nafaḥāt*, pp. 336, 337; *Safīnat-ul-Awliyā*, pp. 102, 103.

<sup>36</sup> Abul Ḳāsim b. 'Alī b. 'Abdullāh al-Gurgānī, was a contemporary of al-Hujwērī, the author of *Kaḫf-ul-Mahjūb*, who records an instance of personal contact with the *Shaiḫ* (see *Kaḫf*., pp. 109, 170). He died in 459 A.H. See *Nafaḥāt*, pp. 282, 283; *Safīnat-ul-Awliyā*, p. 75. *Khazīna*, II, pp. 7, 8.

<sup>37</sup> Muḥiuddīn Abū Muḥammad 'Abdul Ḳādir b. Abī Šālih Mūsā al-Jilī, one of the greatest and most celebrated saints of Baghdād, was born in 470 A.H. = 1077-1078 A.D. He died in 561=1166 A.D.; and the order of the *Ḳādirīs*, to which *Dārā Shikūh* belonged, owes its existence to him. Prof. Margoliouth has given the salient points of his life in the *Encycl. of Islam*, vol. I, pp. 41, 42; see also *Nafaḥāt*, N. Lees' ed., pp. 586-590 and *Shams-ul-ulamā* M. Hidāyat Ḥusain's *Catalogue of Arabic MSS. in the Būhār Library*, Calcutta, p. 132.

<sup>38</sup> Abū Madyan *Shu'āib* b. al-Ḥusain al-Andalūsī, was born at Cantillana (*Kaṭniyāna*), a village near Seville. According to Jāmī, Muḥiuddīn Ibn al-'Arabī received training at his hands. He died in 594=1197-1198 A.D., or in 590 A.H. = 1193 A.D., as recorded in *Nafaḥāt*. His Ṣūfīatic doctrine may be summed up in the following verse which he is said to have often repeated. "Say, Allāh, and abandon all that is matter, or is connected with it, if thou desirest to attain the true goal." *Encycl. of Islam*, vol. I, p. 99. See *Nafaḥāt*, p. 473, *Safīnat-ul-Awliyā*, p. 67.

<sup>39</sup> *Shaiḫ* Muḥiuddīn Ibn al-'Arabī was born at Murcia, in Spain, on July 25, 1165 A.D. He is considered to be one of the greatest mystics of Islam. Of his

extant works 150 are known, of which *Fuṣūṣ-ul-Ḥikm*, the *Fuṣūḥāt-ul-Makkiya* and the *Diwān* enjoy wide celebrity. He came to the East in 1201 A.D. and died at Damascus on November 16, 1240 A.D. See Browne, *Literary History of Persia*, vol. II, pp. 497-501; *Nafahāt*, Nassau Lees' edition, pp. 633-645.

<sup>40</sup> Abul Jannāb Aḥmad b. 'Umar al-Khiwāḳī, commonly known as *Shaiḳh Najmuddīn Kubrā*, was the celebrated mystic of *Khwārazm*. His title "Kubrā" is derived from the name of "*aṭ-ṭimmat-ul-Kubrā*", or "the supreme calamity", given him on account of his wonderful ability as a debater. He was killed during the sack of *Khwārazm* by the Mongols, 618 A.H. = 1221. See Browne, *Literary History of Persia*, vol. II, pp. 491-494; *Nafahāt*, Nassau Lees' edition, pp. 480-487; *Safinat-ul-Awliyā*, p. 103-106.

<sup>41</sup> Abū Ṭālib (or Abū Ḥāmid) Muhammad b. Abū Bakr Ibrāhīm, better known as Farīduddīn 'Aṭṭār, is the celebrated mystic poet. He is said to have composed 114 works but, now, only about 30 are extant. His *Tadhkirat-ul-Awliyā*, is one of the most wellknown biographies of Muslim saints and mystics. Various dates have been given of his death, but the most acceptable of all, is, perhaps, 627 A.H. For his life see Browne, *Literary History of Persia*, vol. II, pp. 506-515 and the valuable introduction to *Tadhkirat-ul-Awliyā* written by Mīrzā Muhammad of *Qazwin*.

<sup>42</sup> Jalāluddīn Muḥammad, commonly called Jalāluddīn Rūmī, the author of the celebrated *Mathnawī*, was born at Balkh, in 1207 A.D. He had to leave his native country during his infancy and, after staying at several places, settled at *Kūniya*, where he came in contact with that mystic of magnetic personality—*Shams-i-Tabriz*. Rūmī is also the author of a *Diwān* which is dedicated to the memory of his spiritual guide, the well-known *Shams-i-Tabriz*. He died in February, 1231. For his life see Browne, *Literary History of Persia*, vol. II, pp. 515-525; *Nafahāt*, p. 409.

<sup>43</sup> Mu'īnuddīn Muḥammad *Chishtī*, who is considered by many as the greatest mystic of India, was born in 537 A.H. = 1142 A.D. Having travelled in *Khurāsān*, he came to *Baghdād* and thence to *Dihli*, (598 A.H. = 1193) and finally to *Ajmir*, where he died in 633 = 1236. His tomb is visited every year by thousands of his votaries. He is the founder of the *Chishtī* order, which finds the largest number of votaries in India. A lithographed *Diwān*, popularly ascribed to him, has been conclusively proved to be the work of Mu'īnuddīn Miskīn, the famous preacher of *Hirāt* and author of *Ma'ārij-un-Nubuwwat*.

<sup>44</sup> Muḥammad b. Muḥammad, called *Khwāja Bahāuddīn Naqshband*, the founder of the *Naqshbandī* order, was born at *Bukhārā*, in A.H. 728 = 1327 A.D. His sayings were collected by one of his disciples, a copy of which is preserved in the British Museum (Rieu, p. 862). Bahāuddīn died in 791 A.H. = 1388 A.D. See *Nafahāt*, Nassau Lees' edition, pp. 439-445; *Safinat-ul-Awliyā* pp. 78, 79.

<sup>45</sup> *Khwāja Nāṣiruddīn 'Ubaidullāh Ahrār*, better known as *Khwāja Ahrār*, was born in 806 A.H. = 1403 A.D. His life and teachings form the main topic of 'Alī b. Ḥusain al-Wā'iṣ al-Kāshifī's, *Raḡhāḳāt 'Ain-ul-Ḥayāt*, which records his death on the 29th of Rabī' I, 895 A.H. (= 1489 A.D.). See *Nafahāt*, p. 364.



<sup>46</sup> Nūr-ud-dīn 'Abdur Raḥmān Jāmī, the well-known author of *Nafahāt-ul-Uns* and the last great classical poet of Persia, was born in a village in the district of Jām, on the 23rd Šha'bān, 817 A.H. = 7th November, 1414 A.D. He attended the courts of Sultān Abū Sa'īd and Sultān Ḥusain Bayḡarā and died at Hirāt, on the 18th Muḥarram, 898 A.H. = 9th November, 1492 A.D. Besides *Haft Awrang* and three *Dīwāns*, *Aghā'at-ul-Lama'āt*, *Arba'in*, *Shawāhid-un-Nubuwwat* and other works on religious and Ṣūfī subjects are also written by him. See K. B. 'Abdul Muḥtadir's *Catalogue of the O.P. Library*, Bankipora, vol. II, pp. 32-90.

<sup>47</sup> Mīr Muḥammad b. Sā'in Dātā, commonly known as Mīyān Mīr or Mīyān Jiv, was born in A.H. 938. He came to Lahore and stayed there for about sixty years. He was highly respected for his piety and was frequently visited by Šhāh-Jahān and Dārā Šhikūh. His death took place on the 7th Rabī' I, 1045 A.H., at the ripe old age of 107. Dārā Šhikūh has written a work, entitled *Sakīnat-ul-Awliyā*, dealing with the life of the saint and his disciples, and has also given a notice of the life of the saint in his *Sakīnat-ul-Awliyā*.

<sup>48</sup> He was one of the spiritual teachers of Dārā, and died on 15th Rabī', 1062, (*Ḥasanāt-ul-'Arīfīn*, pp. 53-57.)

<sup>49</sup> Mullā Šhāh Muḥammad b. Mullā 'Abd Muḥammad, commonly known as Mullā Šhāh or Lisānullāh, came from Badakhshān to Lahore in 1023 A.H. = 1614 A.D., and became a disciple of Mīyān Mīr, the great saint of the time. He was highly respected by Dārā Šhikūh who was initiated by him into the *Kādirī* order in 1049 A.H. = 1639 A.D. After the death of Mīyān Mīr (1045 A.H.), Mullā Šhāh retired to Kaḥmīr where he passed the remaining days of his life in a monastery built by Dārā Šhikūh and his sister Jahān Ārā. He died in 1072 A.H. = 1661-62 A.D. Mullā Šhāh was a voluminous writer and has left a *Dīwān*, which has been lithographed, besides several works on Ṣūfism. (For his life see *Sakīnat-ul-Awliyā*, pp. 116-158.)

<sup>50</sup> Šhaikh Šhāh Muḥammad Dilrubā is spoken of by Dārā Šhikūh as one of his teachers (*Ḥasanāt-ul-'Arīfīn*, pp. 59-61) and considered as "unrivalled in *Fakīrī*, self-suppression, religious exercises, retirement and singularity." Further, he tells us that now-a-days (i.e., about 1064 A.H.) he has adopted a life of complete isolation and sees the face of none and speaks with visitors from behind the veil. Dārā records a number of very interesting sayings of the saint in his *Ḥasanāt-ul-'Arīfīn* (pp. 59-61).

<sup>51</sup> Šhaikh Ṭayyib Sarhindī receives very scanty notice in the *Ḥasanāt-ul-'Arīfīn* of Dārā Šhikūh. There, (p. 45 of the Urdū text), he is spoken of as a friend of Bābā Piyāray and as one who narrated several very interesting anecdotes of the Bābā. Beyond this, I have not been able to get any other information regarding the life of this Šhaikh.

<sup>52</sup> Bāwā Lāl Bairāgī was a Hindū saint who was held in high esteem by Dārā Šhikūh. For his life and the conversations that he had with Dārā Šhikūh see *Introduction*.

XIII. DISCOURSE ON *Barhmānd*.

By *Barhmānd* is meant "All" (*kuḷ*), which (term) applies to the determination of the Necessary Self in the shape of a round globe and, as it is not inclined towards or joined to any one, its proportion to all is equal and every creation and exhibition takes place in its midst—hence the name *Barhmānd*, given to it by the Indian monotheists.

XIV. DISCOURSE ON THE DIRECTIONS (*Jihāt*).

The Muslim monotheists regard the East, the West, the North, the South, the top and the bottom as each a separate direction. Hence, according to them, there are six directions, while, according to the reckoning of the Indian monotheists, there are ten directions (in all). They consider the space between the East, the West, the North and the South as each a separate direction and, accordingly, name them *dah dīshā*<sup>1</sup>.

XV. DISCOURSE ON THE SKIES (*Āsmānhā*).

According to the Indians, the skies, which are called *Gagan*<sup>2</sup>, are eight in number. Of these, seven are the stations of the seven planets, namely, Saturn, Jupiter, Mars, Sun, Venus, Mercury and the Moon. In the Indian language, however, they are called the seven *nichattars*,<sup>3</sup> that is, *sanīchar*<sup>4</sup>, *brahspat*<sup>5</sup>, *mangal*<sup>6</sup>, *sūraj*<sup>7</sup>, *sukur*<sup>8</sup>, *budh*<sup>9</sup>, and *chandra-mās*.<sup>10</sup> Now, the sky which contains all the fixed stars is regarded as the eighth and the learned men call this very sky 'the eighth sphere', or, 'the sphere of fixed stars' (*ḥalak-i-thawābit*), while the Muhammadan religious doctors (*ahl-i-ḥar'*) designate it *Kursī* in their own phraseology. (So runs the Holy verse): "*His Kursī (throne) extends over the heavens and the earth.*"<sup>11</sup>

The ninth (sky), which is called *mahā akās*<sup>12</sup>, has not been included in the (list of) skies; the reason being that it (i.e. *mahā akās*) encircles all and even the *Kursī*, the skies and the earths are contained in it.

XVI. DISCOURSE ON THE EARTH (*Zamīn*).

According to the Indians, the earth has been divided into seven layers, called *Sapat tūl*<sup>13</sup>, each of which is named *atal*<sup>14</sup>, *batal*<sup>15</sup>.

<sup>1</sup> *Deśa dīśh.*    <sup>2</sup> *Gagana.*    <sup>3</sup> *Nakṣatra.*    <sup>4</sup> *Sannaiçara.*    <sup>5</sup> *Brahspati.*  
<sup>6</sup> *Māngala.*    <sup>7</sup> *Sūrya.*    <sup>8</sup> *Sukra.*    <sup>9</sup> *Budha.*    <sup>10</sup> *Candramas.*  
<sup>11</sup> *Kur'ān, Ch. 11 : 255.*    <sup>12</sup> *Mahākāśa.*    <sup>13</sup> *Sapta tala.*    <sup>14</sup> *Atala.*    <sup>15</sup> *Vitala.*

*sutal*<sup>1</sup>, *talātal*<sup>2</sup>, *māhātal*<sup>3</sup>, *rasātal*<sup>4</sup>, and *pātāl*<sup>5</sup> According to the Muslims also, the earth has seven (layers), as contained in the Holy verse: "*Allāh is He who created seven heavens, and of the earth the like of them.*"<sup>6</sup>

## XVII. DISCOURSE ON THE DIVISIONS OF THE EARTH.

(*Kismat-i-Zamīn*).

The learned men have divided the inhabited globe into seven parts, designating them as the "seven spheres" (*Haft Iklim*), which the Indians name *sapatdīp*.<sup>7</sup> They do not consider the seven spheres as the layers of an onion, rather, they conceive them, as the steps of a ladder. And, the seven mountains, which the Indians call *sapat kulāchal*<sup>8</sup>, are regarded by them as surrounding every sphere—their names being—(1) *Sumī-ū*<sup>9</sup> (2) *Samūpat*<sup>10</sup>, (3) *Himakūt*<sup>11</sup>, (4) *Himavan*<sup>12</sup>, (5) *Nakadh*, (6) *Pārjātar*<sup>13</sup> and (7) *Kailās*.<sup>14</sup> Accordingly, it is mentioned in the *Qur'ān*: "*And the mountains are projections thereon,*" (i.e. on the earth).<sup>15</sup>

Now, round each of the seven mountains there are seven seas, which are surrounding each mountain. They are called *Sapat Samundar*:<sup>16</sup> their names being: (1) *Lavan Samundar*<sup>17</sup>, or the sea of salt; (2) *Unchch ras samundar*<sup>18</sup>, or the sea of sugar-candy, (3) *Surā Samundar*<sup>19</sup>, or the sea of wine, (4) *Ghirat Samundar*<sup>20</sup>, or the sea of Ghee, (5) *Dadh Samundar*<sup>21</sup>, or the sea of curd, (6) *Khīr Samundar*<sup>22</sup>, or the sea of milk and (7) *Sawād jal*,<sup>23</sup> or the sea of pure water. The fact that the seas are seven in number is ascertainable from the (following) verse of the *Qur'ān*: "*And were every tree that is in the earth (made into) pens and the sea (to supply it with ink), with seven more seas to increase it, the words of Allāh would not come to an end.*"<sup>24</sup> Now in every land, mountain and river, there is a variety of creation. The land, the mountain, and the river which are above all lands, mountains

<sup>1</sup> *Sutala.*

<sup>2</sup> *Talātala.*

<sup>3</sup> *Mahātala.*

<sup>4</sup> *Rasātala.*

<sup>5</sup> *Pātāla.*

<sup>6</sup> *Qur'ān*, Ch. LXV: 12.

<sup>7</sup> *Saptadvīpa.*

<sup>8</sup> *Sapta Kulācala.*

<sup>9</sup> *Sumeru.*

<sup>10</sup> *Suktīmah.*

<sup>11</sup> *Hemakuṣa.*

<sup>12</sup> *Himavat.*

<sup>13</sup> *Pārīyātra.*

<sup>14</sup> *Kailāsa.*

<sup>15</sup> *Qur'ān* Ch. LXXVIII: 7.

<sup>16</sup> *Sapta Samudra.*

<sup>17</sup> *Lavaṇa Samudra.*

<sup>18</sup> *Iksu-rasa Samudra.*

<sup>19</sup> *Surā Samudra.*

<sup>20</sup> *Ghṛta Samudra.*

<sup>21</sup> *Dadhī Samudra.*

<sup>22</sup> *Khīra Samudra.*

<sup>23</sup> *Svādūjala.*

<sup>24</sup> *Qur'ān*, Ch. XXXI: 27.

and rivers, are called *Sarag*<sup>1</sup> by the Indian doctors, which, in other words, is called *Bihisht* or *Jannat* (i.e. Paradise) (by the Muslims). Now, the land, the river and the mountain which are below (all) lands, mountains and the rivers, are known as *narak*<sup>2</sup>, or *Dūzakh* and *Jahannam*, that is, Hell and the infernal fire. The Indian monotheists have held that the Heaven and the Hell are not beyond this very universe (of ours), which we call *Barhmānd* and (they further hold) that the seven skies, which are the stations of the seven planets, do not revolve above Paradise but (rather) round it. The roof of Paradise is called *man akās*, that is '*Arsh*', and its (i.e. Paradise) ground is called *Kursi*.

XVIII. DISCOURSE ON THE WORLD OF *Barzakh* (*Interval between the Death of a Man and the Resurrection*).

Our Prophet, may peace be on him and salutation, has said: "*Whosoever dies, verily, there is resurrection for him.*"

After death, *ātmā*, or soul, having left the body of elements, enters, without any delay, the body of *mukt*, which is called *Sūcham Sarīr*.<sup>3</sup> It is a fine body, formed by our action—good action having a good and bad action having a bad form. Now, after "Question and Answer," (which will be made after death), those deserving of Paradise will be taken to Paradise, while those deserving of Hell to Hell; as stated in the Holy verse: "*So as to those who are unhappy, they shall be in the fire; for them shall be sighing and groaning in it: Abiding therein so long as the heavens and the earth endure, except as thy Lord pleases; surely thy Lord is the mighty doer of what He intends. And as to those who are made happy, they shall be in the garden, abiding in it as long as the heavens and the earth endure, except as thy Lord pleases: a gift which shall never be cut off.*"<sup>4</sup>

Now, "bringing out of hell," means that, before the destruction of the skies and the earths, He may, if He wishes, take out (the condemned person) from Hell and carry him to Paradise. In explaining this verse, Ibn Mas'ūd<sup>5</sup>, may God be pleased with him, has said that "a period will come in the (life of) Hell when, after a long sojourn, no one will remain

<sup>1</sup> *Svarga*.

<sup>2</sup> *Naraka*.

<sup>3</sup> *Sūchama Sarīra*.

<sup>4</sup> *Kur'ān*, Ch. XI: 106, 107, 108.

<sup>5</sup> Ibn Mas'ūd ('Abdullāh b. Mas'ūd) (b. 28 before Hijra) was a well-known companion of the Prophet. He was present at the battle of Badr. His death took place at al-Madīna in 32 A.H.

inside it." And, "bringing out of Paradise", means that, before the destruction of the skies and the earths, God may, if He wishes, bring up its occupants to the High Paradise (*Firdaws-i-A'lā*)—for His generosity is limitless. The following Holy verse is also a proof (of the above statement): "*And best of all is Allāh's goodly pleasure—that is the grand achievement*"<sup>1</sup>—namely, that God has a Paradise which is larger than other Paradises.

The Indians call it *Baikunth*<sup>2</sup>, which, in the opinion of the Indian monotheists, is the greatest salvation.

### XIX. DISCOURSE ON THE RESURRECTION (*Ḳiyāmat*).

The Indian monotheists have held that, after a very long stay in Heaven or Hell, the *ṃahā parli*<sup>3</sup>, or the Great Resurrection, will take place, which (fact) is also ascertainable from the Holy verse (of the *Ḳur'ān*). "*But when the Great Resurrection comes.*"<sup>4</sup> The following verse also speaks of the same, "*And the trumpet shall be blown, so all those that are in the heavens and all those that are in the earth shall swoon, except such as Allāh pleases.*"<sup>5</sup>

This (exception) refers to the group of *Āriṣ* (i.e. Knowers of God) who are immune from senselessness or thoughtlessness both in this and the next world. Now, after the upsetting of the skies, the destruction of the heavens and the hells and the completion of the age of *Barhmānd*, the occupants of Heaven and Hell will achieve *mukt*<sup>6</sup>; that is, both will be absorbed and annihilated in the Self of the Lord, as stated in the Holy verse: "*Every one on it must pass away. And there will endure for ever the person of thy Lord, the Lord of glory and honour.*"<sup>7</sup>

### XX. DISCOURSE ON *Mukt* (SALVATION).

*Mukt* means the annihilation and disappearance of determinations, in the Self of the Lord, as it appears from the Holy verse: "*And best of all is Allāh's goodly pleasure—that is the grand achievement.*"<sup>8</sup>

Now, entrance into *Ridwān-i-Akbar*, or the High Paradise, is a great salvation, called *mukt*. *Mukt* is of three kinds :

<sup>1</sup> *Ḳur'ān*, Ch. IX : 72.

<sup>2</sup> *Vaikunṭha*.

<sup>3</sup> *Mahāpralaya*.

<sup>4</sup> *Ḳur'ān*, Ch. LXXIX : 34. Mawlawī Muḥammad 'Alī has translated, as "the great predominating calamity" which, he says, may not necessarily refer to Resurrection.

<sup>5</sup> *Ḳur'ān* Ch. XXXIX : 68.

<sup>6</sup> *Mukti*.

<sup>7</sup> *Ḳur'ān*, Ch. LV : 26, 27.

<sup>8</sup> *Ḳur'ān*, Ch. IX : 72.

*First, Jivan mukt*<sup>1</sup>, or salvation in life. According to them (i.e. the Ihdians), *Jivan mukt* consists in one's attainment of salvation and freedom, by being endowed with the wealth of knowing and understanding the Truth, in seeing and considering everything of this world as *one*, in ascribing to God, and not to oneself, all (i.e. man's) deeds, actions, movements and behaviour, whether good or bad, and in regarding oneself, together with all other existing objects, as in complete identity with the Truth. Further, he should regard God as manifesting Himself in all the stages and should look upon *Barhmānd*, which the Šūfts call '*Ālam-i-Kubrā* (or, the Great World) and is (moreover) the "Complete Form" of God, as the corporeal body of God. He should regard '*Unsur-i-A'zam* (or the Great Element) namely, *mahā akās*, as *Sūcham Sarir*<sup>2</sup>, or the fine body of God, and should consider the Self of God as the soul of that body. Further, considering Him as One Fixed Person, he should behold or know nothing, save the Self of that Unique, Incomparable Lord, whether (it be) in a particle of dust or a mountain, whether in the manifest or the hidden world. Now, just as a human being, who is called the 'smaller world' ('*Ālam-i-Šaghīr*), is one individual, despite his various and numerous limbs and just as his personality is not multitudinous on account of his many limbs, so, that Unique Self cannot be considered multitudinous on account of the variety of determinations. (Verse) :

"The whole world, whether of souls or bodies,  
Is One Fixed Person—called '*Ālam*.'"

So, one should consider God, the Most Holy and High, Who is not separated even by a hair's breadth, as the soul and life of that "Fixed Person"; as is said by Shaikh Sa'duddīn Ḥummu'ī.<sup>3</sup> *Quatrain* :

"Truth is the soul of the world, the whole world the trunk,  
Souls, angels and senses are the bodies.

The skies, the elements, the three Kingdoms of nature (i.e.,  
animal, vegetable and mineral) and the bodies—

This is Monotheism and all else is device and artifice."

<sup>1</sup> *Jivanmukti*.

<sup>2</sup> *Sūkṣma Sarira*.

<sup>3</sup> Sa'duddīn b. al-Muwayyad Ḥummu'ī was a great mystic and a writer of numerous works on Šūfism. A summary of 400 of his works, entitled *Kaṣf-ul-Ḥaṣṣ'īq*, is noticed in A.S.B. Catalogue of Persian MSS., p. 565. He died in 650 A.H. = 1253 A.D.

Similarly, the Indian monotheists, like Vayās<sup>1</sup> and others, having considered *Barhmānd*, which is 'Ālam-i-Kabīr (or the great world), as one individual self, have, accordingly, described the different limbs of its (i.e. *Barhmānd*'s) body. The reason (of such description) is that whenever a pure mystic casts his eyes on anything he conceives that he is looking at a particular limb of *mahā puras*<sup>2</sup>, that is, the Self of the Truth, Sanctified and Exalted is He.

(Now), *Pātāl*<sup>3</sup>, which is the seventh layer of the earth, is the sole of *mahā puras*' foot; *Rasātāl*<sup>4</sup>, which is the sixth layer, is the upper part of *mahā puras*' foot; the Satans are the fingers of *mahā puras*' foot; the steeds used by the Satans are the nails of *mahā puras*' foot; *Mahātāl*<sup>5</sup>, which is the fifth layer of the earth, is the ankle-bone of *mahā puras*; *Talātāl*<sup>6</sup>, which is the fourth layer of the earth, is the shank of *mahā puras*; *Sutal*<sup>7</sup>, which is the third layer of the earth, is the knee of *mahā puras*; *Batal*<sup>8</sup>, which is the second layer of the earth, is the thigh of *mahā puras*; *Atal*<sup>9</sup>, which is the first layer of the earth, is the special organ of *mahā puras*; *Kāl*<sup>10</sup>, or time, is the pace of *mahā puras*; *Parjānat dīvā*<sup>11</sup>, who is the cause of birth and issue throughout the whole world, is the sign of manhood and virility of *mahā puras*; rain is the seed of *mahā puras*; *bhuluk*<sup>12</sup>, namely, from the earth up to the sky, is the part below the navel of *mahā puras*; the three southern and the three northern mountains are the right and the left hands of *mahā puras*; *sumir parat*<sup>13</sup> is the buttocks of *mahā puras*; the light of the false dawn is the thread of the lace of *mahā puras*' garments; the light of the true dawn is the whiteness of *mahā puras*' sheet (*chādar*); the evening when the twilight is visible is the garment, covering *mahā puras*' private parts; the sea, namely, the encircling ocean, is the circumference and depth of *mahā puras*' navel; *Bādāvāna*<sup>14</sup>, namely, the place of the fire, which even today is sucking the water of the seas and is preventing storms and will suck all waters on the day of Resurrection, is the heat and warmth of *mahā puras*' stomach; the rivers are the veins of *mahā puras* and, as

---

1 Vyāsa.	2 Mahāpurusa.	3 Pātāla.	4 Rasātāla.
5 Mahātāla.	6 Talātāla.	7 Sutāla.	8 Vītāla.
9 Atāla.	10 Kāla.	11 Parjanya devatā.	12 Bhūloka.
13 Sumarupavata.	14 Vāḍavaṅnala.		

all veins reach the navel, so all the rivers meet the ocean; the *Gangā*, the *Jamnā* and the *Sarastī* are the principal veins (*Shahrag*) of *mahā puras*; *anklā*, *jamnān*, *biklā*, *jamunān*, *Sakhmanā*<sup>1</sup> and *Sarastī bhuluk*, which is above *bhuluk* and is the abode of *Gandharp divitās*<sup>2</sup> and where all sounds originate, are the stomach of *mahā puras*; the fire of "the smaller Resurrection" (*Kiyāmat-i-Ṣuḡhrā*) is the morning appetite of *mahā puras*; the drying up of waters in "the smaller Resurrection" is the thirst of *mahā puras*; *sarag luk*,<sup>3</sup> which is above *bhuluk* and is one of the divisions of Paradise, is the chest of *mahā puras*, for, it is the abode of perpetual festivity, happiness and peace; all the stars are the various jewels of *mahā puras*; gift, before the asking, which is liberality and bounty, is the right breast and gift, after the asking, which is donation, is the left breast of *mahā puras*; moderation (*i'tidāl*), which is composed of *rajūgun*,<sup>4</sup> *satūgun*<sup>5</sup> and *tamūgun*,<sup>6</sup> called *parakart*<sup>7</sup> (collectively), is the heart of *mahā puras*; and, just as water-lily has three colours, namely, white, red and violet, so the heart also, whose colour is like that of a water-lily, has three qualities, (which may be identified with) the three colours of manifestation, namely, *Barhmā*, *Bishun* and *Mahish*; *Barhmā*, who is also called *man*, is the beating and intention of the heart of *mahā puras*; *Bishun* is the love and mercy of *mahā puras*; *Mahish* is the wrath and rage of *mahā puras*; the moon, which removes the heat of pain and grief, is the smile and the happy mood of *mahā puras*; the night is the bow of *mahā puras*; the *sumir parat*<sup>8</sup> mountain is the backbone of *mahā puras*; the mountains that are on the right and the left of *Sumirū* are the bones of the ribs of *mahā puras*; the two hands of *mahā puras* are the eight guardian angels who have *Indar*<sup>9</sup> as their chief, (the latter) possessing the complete power of bestowing and pouring and of withholding and stopping rain; the right hand of *mahā puras* is that of showing generosity and pouring rain, while the left one is that of holding the same back; *amcharā*,<sup>10</sup> or the *Houris* (*Hūr*) of Paradise, are the fingers of the palm of *mahā puras*; the angels, called *chach*,<sup>11</sup> are the nails of the hand of *mahā puras*; the three *luk pāl*<sup>12</sup> angels are the right hand of *mahā puras*; . . . . . the angel named *jam*<sup>13</sup> is the arm of *mahā puras*; the remaining

1 These words could not be identified.

2 *Gandharv devatā*.

3 *Svapiloka*.

4 *Rajoguna*.

5 *Satvaguna*.

6 *Tamoguna*.

7 *Prakṛti*.

8 *Sumeruparvata*.

9 *Indra*.

10 *Apsaras*.

11 *Yakṣa*.

12 *Lokapala*.

13 *Yama*.



*luk pāl* angels are the left hand of *mahā puras*; the angel *Kubair* is the knee of *mahā puras*.

*Kālap birach*<sup>1</sup>, or the *Tūbā*<sup>2</sup> tree, is the wand of *mahā puras*; the southern and the northern poles are the right and the left shoulders, respectively, of *mahā puras*; the *luk pāl* angel, named *Baran*, who is the superintendent of water and resides in the west, is the bone of *mahā puras*' neck; *anāhat*,<sup>3</sup> or *Sulṭān-ul-Adhkār*, is the thin voice of *mahā puras*; *mahar luk*<sup>4</sup>, which is above *sarag luk*<sup>5</sup>, is the throat and neck of *mahā puras*; *jan luk*<sup>6</sup>, which is above *mahar luk*, is the auspicious face of *mahā puras*; the will of the world is the chin-pit of *mahā puras*; the avarice of the world is the lower lip of *mahā puras*; the sense of shame and modesty is the upper lip of *mahā puras*; the chest, that is, (the abode of) love and attachment, is the gums of *mahā puras*; the meal of the whole world is the food of *mahā puras*; the element of water is the palate and mouth of *mahā puras*; the element of fire is the tongue of *mahā puras*; *sarasī* is the faculty of speech of *mahā puras*; the four *Vedas*, or the four books of truth, are the speeches of *mahā puras*; *māyā*, or love, which is the cause of creation of the universe, is the laughter and good humour of *mahā puras*; the eight directions of the world are the two ears of *mahā puras*; *Ashni Kumār*<sup>7</sup>, who are the two angels of exceeding beauty, are the two nostrils of *mahā puras*; *gandha tanmātar*<sup>8</sup>, or the element of dust, is the smelling faculty of *mahā puras*; the element of air is the breathing faculty of *mahā puras*; *jan luk* and *tap luk*,<sup>9</sup> which are the fifth and sixth divisions of Paradise, are illumined with the light of His Self, and their southern and northern halves are the right and the left eyes, respectively, of *mahā puras*; the pure light (or, *nūr*), which is called "the Eternal Sun," is the faculty of eye-sight possessed by *mahā puras*; the whole creation is the favourable glance of *mahā puras*; the days and the nights of the world are the twinklings of the eyes of *mahā puras*; the angel *Mitr*, who is the commissary of love and friendship and the angel *Tavastā*<sup>10</sup>, who is the commissary of wrath and rage,

<sup>1</sup> *Kalpa vrikṣa*.

<sup>2</sup> *Tūbā*, a tree on the seventh heaven, is said to be the abode of Gabriel. It is stated that no one can go above the Tree—the only exception being made in the case of Muḥammad on the night of *Mirāj*, or, Ascent. <sup>3</sup> *Anāhata*.

<sup>4</sup> *Mahar loka*.

<sup>5</sup> *Svaragaloka*.

<sup>6</sup> *Janaloka*.

<sup>7</sup> *Aśvinī kumāra*.

<sup>8</sup> *Gandhatahmātra*.

<sup>9</sup> *Tapaloka*.

<sup>10</sup> *Tvasta*

is the two eye-brows of *mahā puras*; *tap luk*, which is above *jan luk*, is the forehead of *mahā puras*; and the *sat luk*, which is above all *laks*, is the skull of *mahā puras*; the verses of *Tawhīd* (monotheism) and the Book of God are the *dura mater* of *mahā puras*; the black clouds, which carry the water of *mahā parli*<sup>1</sup> (i.e., the great dissolution), are the hairs of *mahā puras*; the vegetation of all the *laks* is the hair of *mahā puras*' body; *Lachmī*<sup>2</sup>, who is the wealth and adornment of the world, is the beauty of *mahā puras*; the shining sun is the purity of *mahā puras*' body; *bhūt akās*<sup>3</sup> are the pores of *mahā puras*' body; *chid akās*<sup>4</sup> is the soul of *mahā puras*' body; the form of every single human being is the abode of *mahā puras*; the perfect man is the closet and special abode of *mahā puras*; as He said to David, may peace be on him, "Oh David, build a house for Me." (He) replied, "Oh God! Thou art exempt from habitation." (God) said, "Thou art my abode. Make thy house void of 'others'." The attributes, found in abundance in *Barhmānd*, are present in man who is the epitome of "the Great World" (*Ālam-i-Kabīr*). In fine, one who beholds and understands in this way attains *jīwan mukt*<sup>5</sup>, and the following verse (of the *Qur'ān*) is in favour of the above: "*Rejoicing in what Allāh has given them out of His grace.*"<sup>6</sup>

*Secondly, Sarab mukt*,<sup>7</sup> or the liberation from every kind of bondage, consists in absorption in His Self. This (salvation) is universally true in the case of all living beings, and, after the destruction of the sky, the earth, the Paradise, the Hell, the *Barhmānd* and the day and the night, they will attain salvation by annihilation in the Self (of the Lord). And the Holy verse: "*And best of all is Allāh's goodly pleasure—that is the grand achievement.*"<sup>8</sup> and "*Now surely the friends of Allāh—they shall have no fear nor shall they grieve,*"<sup>9</sup> is a reference to this very *mukt*, or salvation.

*Thirdly, Sarbadā mukt*<sup>10</sup>, or later salvation, consists in becoming an *Ari* (i.e. knower of God) and in attaining freedom and salvation, in every stage of "progress" (*sair*), whether this (progress) be made in the day or the night, whether in the manifest or the hidden world, whether the *Barhmānd* appears or not and whether (it takes place) in

<sup>1</sup> *Mahāpralaya.*

<sup>2</sup> *Lakmī.*

<sup>3</sup> *Bhūtākāśa.*

<sup>4</sup> *Cidākāśa.*

<sup>5</sup> *Jīwanmukt.*

<sup>6</sup> *Qur'ān, Ch. III: 169.*

<sup>7</sup> *Sarabmukt.*

<sup>8</sup> *Qur'ān, Ch. IX: 72.*

<sup>9</sup> *Qur'ān, Ch. X: 62.*

<sup>10</sup> *Sarbadā mukt.*

the past, the present or the future i.e. *bhūt*<sup>1</sup>, *bhūḥt*<sup>2</sup>, *bartamān*.<sup>3</sup> And, wherever the Holy *Ḳur'ān* speaks of Paradise, “*Abiding therein* (i.e. in *jannat*) *for ever*”<sup>4</sup>, there, (the word) *jannat* (Paradise) applies to *ma'rifat* (or, knowledge) of God and *abadā* (لَا) refers to the perpetuity of this *mukt* (or, salvation); the reason being that, in whatever state (one) may be, the capacity to know God (i.e. of *ma'rifat*) and to receive Eternal favour is (absolutely) necessary. Hence, the following two Holy verses have been revealed (to give good tidings) to such a group (of persons) as attain *mukt*, or, salvation: “*Their Lord gives them good news of mercy from Himself and (His) good pleasure and gardens, wherein lasting blessings shall be theirs; abiding therein for ever; surely Allāh has a Mighty reward with Him*”<sup>5</sup> and, *Give good news (Oh Prophet) to the believers who do good that they shall have a goodly reward; (i.e. a ma'rifat, or, knowledge of God, the Most Holy and High, which, certainly, is a handsome reward for the 'Āriḡs, namely, that of Firdaws-i-Ā'lā) staying in it (i.e. in Firdaws-i-A'lā) for ever.*”<sup>6</sup>

#### XXI. DISCOURSE ON DAY AND NIGHT (*Rūz wa Shab*).

Divinity of Creation and Concealment:—According to the Indian monotheists, the age of *Barhmā*, who is identical with Gabriel, and the annihilation of *Barhmānd* and the end of the “Day of Creation,” or the “Day of Divinity,” is eighteen *anj* years of the world, each *anj* (again) is equal to one thousand years, as mentioned in the two Holy verses of the *Ḳur'ān*: “*And surely a day with thy Lord is as a thousand years of what you number.*”<sup>7</sup> The other Holy verse is: “*To Him ascend the angels and the Spirit (that is Jibra'il or Barhmā) in a day the measure of which is fifty thousand years,*”<sup>8</sup> and each day of which consists of one thousand years, as may be deduced from the former verse (of the *Ḳur'ān*). So, according to my reckoning, the age of Gabriel and the duration of the life of Day and the whole Universe, which is identical with *Barhmānd*, is (equal to) eighteen *anj* years of the world; each *anj* of which (in its turn) is equal to one thousand years—there being not the least increase or decrease. Such is the reckoning of the Indian monotheists. It must also be known that their (i.e. Indians') specification of the figure *eighteen*

<sup>1</sup> *Bhūta*.      <sup>2</sup> *Bhaviḡyat*.

<sup>3</sup> *Vartamāna*.      <sup>4</sup> *Ḳur'ān*, Ch. IX : 22.

<sup>5</sup> *Ḳur'ān*, Ch. IX : 21, 22.

<sup>6</sup> *Ḳur'ān*, Ch. XVIII : 2, 3.

<sup>7</sup> *Ḳur'ān*, Ch. XXII : 47.

<sup>8</sup> *Ḳur'ān*, Ch. LXX : 4.

is based on (the figures) 'eight' and 'ten,' beyond which, they say, no thing can be counted. Now, "the Smaller Resurrections," that have taken place in the past and will so recur in future, are called *khandh parli*<sup>1</sup>, which come either like the inundation of water or the conflagration of fire or the storm. And, after this period has elapsed, this day (of ours) will turn into evening and "the Great Resurrection," which they call *mahā parli*, will take place; as ordained in the following two verses: "On the day when the earth shall be changed into a different earth;"<sup>2</sup> and "On the day when We will roll up heaven like the rolling up of the scroll for writings."<sup>3</sup> Now, after "the Great Resurrection," on the "Night of Concealment," which is parallel to the Day of Manifestation, all the "determinations" will be absorbed in the Self of the Lord—its duration being equal to eighteen *anj* years of the world. And, the period of *avasthātām*<sup>4</sup>, which is identical with *sakhūpat* and *Jabarūt*, is equal to the age of the Lord, who is undisturbed by the creation of mortals or the destruction of the Universe; and the verse of the *Kur'ān*: "Soon will We apply Ourselves to you, O you two armies (of *jin* and human beings),"<sup>5</sup> is a reference to this very *sakhūpat*. During the life of the earth, the Lord God dwells in the stage of *Nāsūt* (or, the Human World) and, during the period of "the Smaller Resurrections," in the stage of *Malakūt* (or, the Invisible World) and, after "the Great Resurrection, in *Jabarūt* (or, the Highest Heaven).

O my friend, whatever I have recorded in this chapter is the outcome of much painstaking and considerable research and is in accordance with my own inspiration, which, although you may have not read in any book or heard from any one, is also in conformity with the two (above-mentioned) Holy verses (of the *Kur'ān*). Now, if this (exposition) falls heavy on the ears of certain defective ones, I entertain no fear on that account: "Then surely Allāh is Self-sufficient, above any need of the worlds."<sup>6</sup>

## XXII. DISCOURSE ON THE INFINITY OF THE CYCLES (*Adwār*).

According to the Indian doctors, God, the Most High, is not confined to these days or these nights only but, that, when these nights will termi-

<sup>1</sup> *Khanṣa pralaya.*

<sup>2</sup> *Kur'ān*, Ch. XIV : 48.

<sup>3</sup> *Kur'ān*, Ch. XXI : 104.

<sup>4</sup> *Avasthātman.*

<sup>5</sup> *Kur'ān*, Ch. LV : 31.

<sup>6</sup> *Kur'ān*, Ch. III : 96.

nate, days will re-appear and when these days will terminate, nights will re-appear—this process continuing without end. This (process) is named *anād parwāh*<sup>1</sup> and K̄hwāja Hāfiz, may mercy be on him, having his eye on this Infinity of cycles, has said :

“ There is no end to my story, or to that of the beloved,  
For, whatever hath no beginning can have no end.”

Now, whatever peculiarities of the manifestation and concealment of His Self have appeared in previous days and nights will also re-appear, in exactly the same manner, in the following days and nights, as stated in the Holy verse : “ *As We originated the first creation, (so) We shall reproduce it.*”<sup>2</sup>

So, after the termination of this cycle, the world of Adam, the father of men, will re-appear in exactly the same manner ; and, as such, it will be endless. And, the verse of the *Kur'ān* : “ *As He brought you forth in the beginning, so shall you also return*”,<sup>3</sup> is also an argument, proving the above (statement). If, however, any one doubts and says that the finality of our Prophet, may peace be on him, is not proved by this exposition, I will tell him that next day also, our Prophet, may peace be on him, will re-appear in an exactly similar manner and on that day (also) he will be called, “ the Last of the Prophets.” The following Tradition, which is narrated in connection with the night of Ascent (*Mi'rāj*), is an argument to this effect. It is said that our Prophet, may peace be on him, saw a line of camels, proceeding (in succession) without any break, and on each of which two bags were laden, in each of which there was a world like that of ours and in each such world there was a Muḥammad (just) like him. (Our Prophet) asked Gabriel, “ What is this ?” (Gabriel) replied, “ Oh Prophet of God ! since my creation, I have been witnessing this line of camels proceeding with bags (laden on them), but, I am also unaware of their (real) significance.” This, (as I believe), is a reference to the Infinity of the Cycles.

Praise be to God for His favours, Who granted me the grace of completing this tract, entitled *Majma'-ul-Bahrain*, in the year 1065 A.H., which corresponds to the forty-second year of the age of this unafflicted and unsorrowing *faqīr*, Muḥammad Dārā Shikūh.

<sup>1</sup> *Anādi prawāha*.

<sup>2</sup> *Kur'ān*, Ch. XXI : 104.

<sup>3</sup> *Kur'ān*, Ch. VII : 29;

# مجمع البكرين

از تصنيف

شاهزاده محمد دارا شكوه

که در سنه ۱۰۶۴ هجري قدسي باتمام رسيد  
و حالا در سنه ۱۳۴۷ هجري مطابق ۱۹۲۸ ميلادي

بسمي و تصحيح اقل عباد

محمد محفوظ الحق

مدرس زبان فارسي و اردو در پريسيديسي كالج كلكته

بجلیه طبع آراسته گردید

## فهرست مضامین مجمع البحرین

صفحه									مضمون
۳	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	۱ — بیان عنصر
۵	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	۲ — بیان حواس
۸	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	۳ — بیان شغل
۹	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	۴ — بیان صفات الله تعالی
۱۰	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	۵ — بیان روح
"	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	۶ — بیان باده
۱۱	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	۷ — بیان عوالم اربعه
۱۳	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	۸ — بیان آواز
۱۵	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	۹ — بیان نور
۱۸	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	۱۰ — بیان رویت
۲۰	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	۱۱ — بیان اسمای الله تعالی
۲۱	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	۱۲ — بیان نبوت و ولایت
۲۳	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	۱۳ — بیان برهماند
"	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	۱۴ — بیان جهات
"	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	۱۵ — بیان آسمانها
۲۵	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	۱۶ — بیان زمین
"	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	۱۷ — بیان قسمت زمین
۲۷	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	۱۸ — بیان عالم برزخ
۴۸	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	۱۹ — بیان قیامت
۲۹	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	۲۰ — بیان مکت
۳۶	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	۲۱ — بیان روز و شب
۳۷	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	۲۲ — بیان بی نهایتی ادوار

## بِسْمِ اللَّهِ الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ

بنام آنکه او نامی ندارد • بهر نامی که خوانی سر بر آرد (۱)  
 حمدِ موفور یگانه را که در زلفِ کفر و اسلام که نقطهٔ مقابل بهم اند  
 بر چهرهٔ زیبایی بی مثل و نظیرِ خویش ظاهر گردانید - و هیچ یکی را از آنها  
 حجابِ رخِ نیکوی خود نساخته •  
 • نظم •

کفر و اسلام در رهش پریاں

وَحَدَّةٌ لَا شَرِيكَ لَهَا كَوَيَانَ (۲)

در همه ارست ظاهر و همه از رست جلوه گر اول ارست و آخر ارست  
 و غیر او موجود نباشد -  
 • رباعی (۳) •

(۱) این شعر از حدیقهٔ الحقیقه حکیم سنالی فرنیست، و داراشکوه هم رباعی  
 درین معنی گفته :

یک نورهٔ ندیدیم ز خورشید جدا • هر قطرهٔ آب هست مین دریا  
 بحق را بجهت نام کس نتواند خواندن • هر نام که هست هست از اسماء خدا  
 و جامی علیه الرحمة هم درین معنی گفته :

که باده و که جام خوانیم ترا • که دانه و که دام خوانیم ترا  
 جز نام تو بر لوح جهان چیزی نیست • آیا بکدام نام خوانیم ترا

( حسنات المارین صفحہ ۵۳ و صفحہ ۴۱ )

(۲) از دربار اکبری مولفهٔ مولوی محمد حسین آزاد (صفحہ ۳۹۲) معلوم میشود که  
 ابوالفضل ابن شعر را برای عمارتی اختیار کرده بود که اکبر در کشمیر بنا نهاد و گویند  
 که این عمارتی بود مشترک در میان هند و اهل اسلام •

(۳) این رباعی از کلام مولانا عبدالرحمن جامی علیه الرحمة است که داراشکوه آنرا

در حسنات المارین (صفحہ ۴۱) در ضمن شطحیات مولانا مرحوم هم نقل نموده •



همسایه و همنشین و هم‌راه همه اوست  
 در دلقِ گدا و اطلسِ شه همه اوست  
 در انجمنِ فرق و نهانخانه جمع  
 بلکه همه اوست <sup>و</sup> ثُمَّ <sup>بَلَّغَهُ</sup> <sup>بَلَّغَهُ</sup> همه اوست

و درودِ نامحدود بر مظهرِ اتم باعثِ ایجادِ عالم حضرت محمد صلی  
 اللهُ عَلَيْهِ وَ سَلَّمَ و بر آلِ کرام و بر اصحابِ عظام او باد - اما بعد میگوید فقیر  
 بیخیز و اندوه محمد دارا شکوه که بعد از دریافتِ حقیقتِ الحقایق و تحقیق  
 رموز و دقائقِ مذهبِ برحقِ صوفیه و فائز گشتن باین عطیةٔ عظمی در صد آن  
 شد که درک کند مشربِ موحدانِ هندی - و با بعضی از محققانِ این قوم  
 و کاملانِ ایشان که بنهایتِ ریاضت و ادراک و فهمیدگی و غایتِ تصوف  
 و خدایابی رسیده بودند مکرر صحبتها داشته و گفتگو نموده - جز اختلافِ  
 لفظی در دریافت و شناختِ حق تفاوتی ندید - ازین جهت سخنانِ  
 فریقین را با هم تطبیق داده و بعضی از سخنان که طالبانِ حق را دانستنِ آن  
 ناگزیر و سودمند است فراهم آورده رسالهٔ ترتیب داده - و چون مجموعهٔ  
 حقایق و معارفِ دو طایفهٔ حق شناس بود لهذا بمجمع البحرین موسوم  
 گردانید بموجب قولِ اکابر که **التَّصَوُّفُ هُوَ الْإِنصَافُ وَالتَّصَوُّفُ تَرْكُ التَّكْلِيفِ**،  
 پس هرکه انصاف دارد و از اهلِ ادراک است در می یابد که در تحقیقِ  
 این مراتب چه غور رفته و یقین که فهمیدگانِ صاحبِ ادراک حَظِّ وافر ازین  
 رساله خواهند برد - و گنجد فهمانِ طریفین را نصیحةٔ از فرایند آن نخواهد شد -  
 و این تحقیق را موافقِ کشف و ذوقِ خود برای اهلیتِ خود نوشته ام ،  
 و مرا با علوم هر در قوم کاری نیست - چنانچه **خواجه عبیدالله احرار (۱) قُدَس**

(۱) **خواجه ناصرالدین عبید الله که بلقب خواجه احرار معروف اند ، از صوفیان جلیل  
 القدر طایفهٔ نقشبندیه بودند ، ولادت شان در سنه ۸۰۶ هـ بوقوع آمده و ایشان بیشتر ایام**

سُرّه فرموده که اگر دانم که کفّری بر خطا زمزمه توحید بهنجاری می سراید میروم و از روی میخوم و منت دار میخوم - وَ مِنَ اللَّهِ التَّوْفِيقُ وَ الْأَسْتَعَانَهُ •

## أ - بیان عناصر

بدانکه عناصر پنج اند و مادّاً جمیع مخلوقات ناسوتی همین پنج اند -  
 اول عنصر اعظم که آن را اهل شرع عرشِ اکبر میگویند - دوم باد - سیوه  
 آتش - چهارم آب و پنجم خاک و این را بزبان اهل هند پانجه بهوت می  
 نامند - اَکْسٌ وَ بَائِیٌ وَ تِیجٌ وَ جَلٌّ وَ پُرتھی - و اکس سه اند، بهوت اکس،  
 من اکس، و چد اکس - آنچه محیط عناصر باشد آن را بهوت اکس گویند،  
 و آنچه محیط موجودات است آن را من اکس نامند و آنچه بر همه محیط  
 و در همه جا باشد آن را چد اکس خوانند، و چد اکس بر حق است یعنی  
 حادث نیست - و بر حدوث و فنی آن هیچ آیه قرآنی و بید که کتب آسمانی  
 باشد دلالت نمی کند - از چد اکس اول چیزی که بهم رسید "عشق" بود  
 که آنرا بزبان موحدان هند مایا گویند وَ کُنْتُ كَفْرًا مَغْفِيًا فَاحْبَبْتُ أَنْ أُعْرِفَ  
 فَخَلَقْتُ الطَّلُقَ بَرِيءٌ دال است، یعنی بوده من گنجی پنهان پس  
 دوست داشتم که شناخته شوم پس ظاهر کردم خلق را برای شناخت خود -  
 و از "عشق" روح اعظم یعنی جیو آتمان پیدا شد که آن را حقیقت محمّدی  
 گویند و آن اشاره بروح کلّی آن سرور صلوة الله وَ سَلَامُهُ عَلَيْهِ است،

زندگانی خویش در سمرقند بسر بردند و بنابر تاریخ ۲۹ ربیع الاول سنه ۸۹۵ هـ وفات یافتند، ملا  
 علی بن حسین الراعظ الکاشفی در "شعاع عین العیاب" تذکرهٔ خواجه احرار بتفصیل  
 نوشته (و هم رجوع کنید به نقعات الانس جامی صفحه ۳۶۴ - ۳۷۰ و سفینه الاولیاء  
 از داراشکوه صفحه ۸۱) - و داراشکوه قول بالا را که از خواجه احرار مروی است، در  
 حسنات المازنین (صفحه ۳۹) هم نقل نموده •

و موحّدانِ هند آن را هَرَن گَربِه و اَرَسَمات اَنمان نامند که اَشوَه بمرتبَه اعظَمیت است - و بعد از آن عنصرِ باد است که آن را نفسِ الرحمن گویند، و از آن نَفَس باد پیدا شد و چون آن نَفَس بجهتِ حبس در حضرتِ وجود که در هنگامِ نَفْضیت برای ظهور داشت گرم بر آمد از باد آتش پیدا شد - و چون در همان نَفَس صفتِ رحمانیت و اتّحاد بود سرد شد و از آتش آب پیدا شد - اما چون عنصرِ باد و آتش از غایتِ لطافت محسوس نیستند و آب به نسبتِ آن هر دو محسوس است، بجهتِ محسوس بودنِ آن بعضی گفته اند که اوّل آب پیدا شد و بعد از آن عنصرِ خاک، و این خاک بمنزله کفِ آب است، چون شیری که در زیرِ آن آتش باشد و بجوش آید و کف کند -

• بیت •

چه دانستم که این دریای بی پایان چنین باشد  
بفشارش آسمان گردد کفِ دریا زمین باشد

• دیگر •

یک قطرهٔ چو بیضه جوشیده گشت دریا  
کف کرد و کف زمین شد وز دودِ او سما شد

و بر عکسِ این در قیامتِ کبری که آن را بزبانِ اهلِ هند مَها پَرّی گویند اوّل فَنایِ خاک خواهد شد و آن را آب فرو خواهد بُرد و آب را آتش حُشک خواهد ساخت و آتش را باد فرو خواهد نشاند، و باد با روحِ اعظم در مَها اکس فرو خواهد رفت کُلُّ شَئٍ هَالِكٌ إِلَّا وَجْهَهُ (۱) - یعنی همه چیز فانی خواهد شد مگر رویِ خدای تعالی که مَها اکس باشد - کُلُّ مَنْ تَلَبَّهٔ فَلَيْ وَ يَبْقَى وَجْهٌ رَبِّكَ ذُو الْجَلَالِ وَالْإِكْرَامِ (۲) یعنی همه آنچه که بر

(۲) قرآن مجید، ۵۵ : ۲۶ •

(۱) قرآن مجید، ۲۸ : ۸۸ •

روی زمین بُود فانی خواهد شد و بقی ماند روی پروردگار تو که صاحب جلال و اکرام است - پس درین در آیه کریمه که برای فانی جمیع اشیاست قید وجه که رفته مراد مَهَا اکس است که آن فنا پذیر نیست و اَلَا مِیْغَرُمُودِی كُلُّ شَیْءٍ هَالِكٌ اِلَّا هُوَ یَعْنِی همه چیز فانی خواهد شد مگر ذات او - و قید رو برای مَهَا اکس باشد چه مَهَا اکس بمنزله بدن لطیف آن ذات مقدّس است - و خاک را برزین اهل هند دَبُوی نامند که همه چیز از پودا شده است و باز همه چیز درو فرو می‌رود بموجب آیه کریمه مِنْهَا خَلَقْنَاكُمْ وَ فِیْهَا نُعِیْدُكُمْ وَ مِنْهَا نُخْرِجُكُمْ تَرَةً اُخْرٰی (۱) - یعنی از خاک خلق کردیم شما را و در آن خاک باز خواهیم برد شما را و از آن خاک بیرون می آیم شما را بار دیگر •

## ۲ - بیان حواس

موافق این پنج عناصر پنج حواس اند که برزین اهل هند آن را پنج اندری گویند، شامّه ذایقه بصیره سامعه و لامسه که آن را برزین اهل هند گهران، رسنا چهچبه سرورتر و توک میگویند - و محسوسات آن را گندهه رس روپ سبد و سپرس نامند - و هر یکی ازین حواس پنجگانه از جنس یکی ازین عناصر بلذد و منسوب بآن - شامّه منسوب است بطفاک چه هیچ یکی از عناصر بوی ندارد الا خاک و احساس بوی شامّه میکند - و ذایقه منسوب است بآب چنانچه آب ظاهر است در زبان - و بصیره منسبت دارد بآتش چنانچه درک رنگها بچشم است و نورانیّت در هر دو ظاهر است - و لامسه را نسبت

است بباد چرا که سبب احساس ملموسات باد است - و سامعه منسوب است بعنصر اعظم که مها اکلس باشد که سبب ادراک اصوات است - و از راه سمع حقیقت مها اکلس بر اهل دل ظاهر میشود و دیگری بر آن مطلع نیست - و این شغلیست مشترک در میان صوفیه و موحدان هند که صوفیه این را شغلِ پسِ انفاس<sup>(۱)</sup> میگویند و ایشان در اصطلاح خود دهن می نامند -

اما حواسِ باطن نیز پنج اند، حس مشترک متخیله متفکره حافظه و واهمه و نزد اهل هند چهار اند بدهه و من و اهنگار و چت و مجموعه این چهار را آنته کرن گویند که بمنزله پنجم آنها است - چت یک عادت دارد که آن را ست پرکوت گویند و این عادت بمنزله پای اوست که اگر آن منقطع شود چت از دریدن باز ماند - اول بدهه یعنی عقل، و بدهه آنست که طرف خیر رود و طرف شر نرود، دریم من که عبودت از دل است و آن دو قوت دارد سنکلب پکلب یعنی عزیمت و نسم، سیوم چت که پیک دل است و کلر اُر دریدن باشد بهر سو و تمیز میان خیر و شر نکند، چهارم اهنگار یعنی نسبت دهندا چیزها بطود، و اهنگار صفت پرم آتما است بسبب مایا، و مایا بزبان ایشان عشق است - و اهنگار نیز سه قسم است، سانگ و راجس و تامس - اهنگار سانگ یعنی گیان سروپ که مرتبه اعلی است آنست که پرم آتما بگوید که هرچه هست همه منم و این مرتبه احاطه کلی است

(۱) در کتابخانه بولین ( آکسفورد ) کتابی است مسمی به " رساله پاس انفاس " از مولفان مولانا عبد الرحمن جامی ( برای تفصیل رجوع کنید بفرست کتابخانه هذا، مرتبه زخر و ابتهی صفحه ۷۵۸ )

همه اشیا را إِلَّا أَنَّهُ بِكُلِّ شَيْءٍ مُّصِيطٌ <sup>(۱)</sup> یعنی دانا و آگاه باش بدرستی که  
 اوست همه چیز را احاطه کننده - دیگر آنکه هُوَ الْأَوَّلُ وَالْآخِرُ وَالظَّاهِرُ وَالْبَاطِنُ  
<sup>(۲)</sup> یعنی اوست اول و اوست آخر و اوست ظاهر و اوست باطن - و أَهْنَكَرَ  
رَاجِسٌ مَدَّهَمٌ است که اوسط باشد و این آنست که نظر بر جیو آتمن داشته  
 بگوید که ذات من از بدن و عناصر منزّه است و جسمانیت بمن نسبت  
 ندارد، لَيْسَ كَمِثْلِهِ شَيْءٌ <sup>(۳)</sup> یعنی نیست مانند او چیزی فَإِنَّ اللَّهَ عَزِيٌّ عَنِ  
الْعَالَمِينَ - <sup>(۴)</sup> یعنی خدای تعالی بی نیاز است از ظهور عالم - و أَهْنَكَرَ تَامَسَ  
أَدَهَمٌ است که ادنی باشد و این أودیلست یعنی مرتبه عبودیت حضرت  
 وجود - و ادنی بودن از جهت آنست که از نهایت نازل و تقید و تعیین  
 نادانی و جهل و غفلت را بخود نسبت میکند و نظر بر حیات محسوسه  
 خود نموده میگوید که "من" و "تو" از مرتبه یگانگی دور می آید:  
قُلْ إِنَّمَا أَنَا بَشَرٌ مِّثْلُكُمْ <sup>(۵)</sup> - یعنی بگو ای محمد که جز این نیست که منم  
 بشری مانند شما - چنانچه بششت میگوید که چون حضرت وجود خواست که  
 منعین شود بمجرد این اراده پریم آتما شد و چون این تقید زباده شد أهنگار  
 بهم رسید و چون تقید دیگر بر آن افزود مهانت که عقل گل باشد نام  
 یافت، و از سنکلب و مهانت من یعنی قلب پیدا شد که آن را پرکوت نیز  
 گویند و از سنکلب من پنج گیان اندری که شامه و لامسه و باصره و سامعه  
 و ذایقه باشند بظهور آمد و از سنکلب و این پنج گیان اندری اعضاء و اجسام  
 بهم رسید و این مجموعه را بدن گویند - پس پریم آتما که ابو الارواح باشد (که

(۱) قرآن مجید، ۴۱: ۵۴ • (۲) قرآن مجید، ۵۷: ۳ •

(۳) « ۴۲: ۱۱ • (۴) « ۳: ۹۶ • (۵) قرآن مجید، ۱۸: ۱۱۰ •

ظهورِ اولِ او حقیقتِ محمدی و ثانیِ او روح القدس که جبرئیل امین باشد است) این همه تقیّدات را از خود پیدا کرده و خود را بآن بسته گردانیده (۱). چنانکه گرم پیله تارهای ابریشم از لعاب خود بر آورده خود را در آن بسته است همچنان حضرت واجب الوجود این همه قیود و همی را از خود بر آورده و خود را درو در آورده است مثل تضم درخت که درخت را از خود بر آورده خود در درخت در می آید و در بند شاخها و برگها و گُلها میشود - پس بدان و هوش دار که پیش از ظهور این عالم در ذات پنهان بود و الحال ذات مقدّس او در عالم پنهان است •

### ۳ — بیان شغل

شغل نزد موحّدان هند اگرچه اقسام است اما بهترین شغلها آنچه را میدانند و آن شغلیست که چه در خواب و چه در بیداری بی قصد و بی اختیار از جمیع ذی نفوس همیشه و هر آن صادر میگردد - چنانچه در آیه کریمه *وَأَنْ مِّنْ شَيْءٍ إِلَّا يُسَبِّحُ بِحَمْدِهِ وَلَكِنْ لَا تَفْقَهُونَ تَسْبِيحَهُمْ* - (۲) اشاره بهمین است - و آن درون رفتن و بیرون آمدن دم را بدو لفظ تعبیر کرده اند، نفسی که بالا می رود "او" میگویند و نفسی که درون می آید "من" می نامند یعنی "او منم" و صوفیه مشغول این دو لفظ را "هو الله" میدانند که در بالا رفتن نفس "هو" و در بیرون آمدن "الله" ظاهر میشود، و این دو لفظ از هر نفسی حیات جاریست و او بیخبر است •

(۱) مولانا مصدق شبلی در "گلشن راز" می فرمایند:—

نه آخر واجب آمد جزو هستی که هستی کرد او را زیر دستی

(۲) قرآن مجید، ۱۷ : ۴۴ •

## ۴ — بیان صفات الله تعالی

نزد صوفیه در صفت است، جمال و جلال که جمیع آفرینش از تحت این دو صفت بیرون نیست. و نزد ققرای هند سه صفت اند که آن را تِرْگَن میگویند، سَت و رَج و وَتَم - سَت یعنی ایجاد، و رَج یعنی ابقا و وَتَم یعنی انفا - و صوفیه صفت ابقا را در ضمن صفت جمال دیده و اعتبار کرده اند - چون هر یکی ازین سه صفت در یکدیگر مندرج اند ققرای هند این سه صفت را تِرْمُورَت نامند که بَرَهْمَا و بِشَن و مِهیش باشند و بزبان صوفیه جبرئیل و میکائیل و اسرافیل گویند - بَرَهْمَا موکل ایجاد است که جبرئیل باشد و بِشَن موکل ابقا است که میکائیل باشد و مِهیش موکل انفا است که اسرافیل باشد - و آب و باد و آتش نیز منسوب باین موکلانند، آب بجبرئیل و آتش بمیکائیل و باد باسرافیل و این سه چیز در جمیع جانداران نیز ظاهر است، بَرَهْمَا که آب باشد در زبلی، مظهر کلام الهی گشت و نطق ازین ظاهر شد، و بِشَن که آتش است در چشم، روشنی و نور و بیفانی از در ظاهر شد و مِهیش که باد است در بینی، در نقطه صور ازین ظاهر شد که در نفس باشد و چون آن منقطع گردد فانی شود •

تِرْگَن سه صفت حق باشد که ایجاد و ابقا و انفاست و مظهر این سه صفت هم بَرَهْمَا و بِشَن و مِهیش اند که صفات آنها در جمیع مخلوقات ظاهر اند، اول مخلوق پیدا میشود باز بقدر موعود میماند و باز فانی میشود، و شکت که قدرت این سه صفت است آن را تِرْدِیوپی گویند، و از آن تِرْمُورَت



که برهما و بشن و مهیش باشند و ازین تردیوی این سه چیز برآمد که آن را سرستی پارتنی و لچمی میگویند، سرستی به رجوگن و برهما تعلق دارد، و پارتنی به نموگن و مهیش، و لچمی به ست گن و بشن .

## ۵ — بیان روح

روح دو قسم است، یکی روح و دیگر ابوالارواح که بزبان فقرای هند این دو روح را آتما و پرم آتما گویند. ( چون ) ذات بخت متعین و مقید گردد چه بلطقت و چه بکثافت بجهت مجرد بودن در مرتبه لطافت او را روح و آتما گویند و در مرتبه کثافت جسد و سریر گویند و ذاتی که متعین بازل گشت روح اعظم باشد که با ذات مجمع الصفات مرتبه احدیت دارد و ذاتی که جمیع ارواح در آن مندرج اند آن را پرم آتما و ابوالارواح گویند. مَثَلِ آب و موج آب بمنزله بدن و روح و سریر و آتما است، و مجموعه امواج از روی کلیت بلوالارواح و پرم آتما ماند و آب صرف بمنزله حضرت رجود و سنده و چتر است .

## ۶ — بیان بلاها

بادی که در بدن انسان حرکت میکند چون در پنج موضع میباشد پنج نام دارد، پَرانِ اَپانِ سَمَنِ اُردانِ وِیان - پَرانِ حرکتِ آن از بینی است تا بانگشتِ پا، و سَم زدنِ خالصیتِ این باد است - اَپانِ حرکتِ این از نشستگاه است تا به عضو مخصوص و این باد گردِ ناف هم حلقه زده است

و باعث حیات همان است <sup>۲</sup> سنان در سینه و ناف حرکت میکند - <sup>۳</sup> اردان، حرکت این از حلق است تا أم الدماغ و رین که ظاهر و باطن ازین باد پر است •

## ۷ - بیان عوالم اربعه

عوالم که جمیع مخلوقات را ناچار گذر بر آنست بطور بعضی از صوفیه چهار اند، نَسُوت و مَلَكُوت و جَبَرُوت و لَاهُوت و بعضی پنج میگویند و عالم مثال را داخل میکنند، و جمعی که عالم مثال را با عالم ملکوت یکی می انگارند چهار میگویند، و بقول فقرای هند ارستهات که عبارت ازین عوالم اربعه باشد چهار اند، جاگرت و سَین و سَکَهِوت و تَریا - جاگرت مناسب است بفاسُوت که عالم ظاهر و عالم بیداری باشد، سَین موافق است بملکُوت که عالم ارواح و عالم خواب باشد، سَکَهِوت موافق است بجَبَرُوت که در آن نقوش هر دو عالم و تمیز "من" و "تو" نباشد خواه چشم را کرده بینی خواه پوشیده، و بسیاری از فقرای هر دو قوم برین عالم مطلع نیستند، چنانچه سید الطایفه استاد ابوالقاسم جنید بغدادی (۱) قَدَسَ اللهُ سِرَّهُ خبر داده که فرموده

(۱) ابوالقاسم بن محمد بن الجنید الطراز القواریری که از صوفیان بزرگ بغداد بودند برادر زادۀ سری السقطی و شاگرد امام شافعی رح بودند، و در بغداد در سنه ۵۲۹۷ (مطابق سنه ۹۱۰ م) فوت شدند، برای تفصیل رجوع کنید به نفعات الانس صفحه ۸۱ و تذکره الاولیا (مرتبه ذاکتر نکلسن) جلد دوم صفحه ۵ تا ۳۶ •

قول بالا که بنام حضرت جنید رح منقول است، بر صفحه ۸۲ نفعات الانس مع تشریح شرح الاسلام موجود است و اغلب این که داراشکوه آن را از نفعات نقل نموده و معلوم

تصوّف آن بود که ساعتی بذشینی بی تیمار - (۱) شیخ الاسلام گفت که بی تیمار چه بود - فرمود که یانت بی جستن و دیدار بی نگریستن، چه بیفنده در دیدار علت است، پس ساعتی بی تیمار نشستن همین است که نقوش عالم ناسوت و ملکوت در آن ساعت بظلمت نگذرند - و نیز آنچه مولانای روم قدس الله سره فرموده اشاره بهمین معنی است: —

خواهی که ببایی یک لحظه مجربش  
 خواهی که بدانی یک لحظه مدانش  
 چون در نهانش جوئی درزی ز آشکارش  
 چون آشکار جوئی معجزی از نهانش  
 چون ز آشکار و پنهان بیرون شوی ببرهان  
 پاهای دراز میکن خوش حسب در امانش

و تریاً موافق است بلاهوت که ذات معض باشد و محیط و شامل و جامع و عین این هر سه عالم - اگر سیر انسان از ناسوت بملکوت و از ملکوت بجبروت و از جبروت بلاهوت باشد این ترقی از دست و اگر حضرت حقیقت الحقیقی که موحدان همد آن را آرس گویند

میشود که داراشکوه این قول حضرت جنید را خیلی دوست میداشت چه او در سه از تصنیفات خویش؛ یعنی رساله حق نما (صفحه ۲۱ نسخه مطبوعه نولکشور) حسانت العارفین (ورق ۸ ب، نسخه قلمی موجوده بومار لالبری) و سکینه الاولیاء (صفحه ۴۶ ترجمه اردو، مطبوعه لاهور) درج نموده.

(۱) مراد از شیخ الاسلام، ابواسمعیل عبد الله بن محمد الانصاری الهرویست که بتاريخ ۲ شعبان سنه ۳۹۶ هـ (مطابق سنه ۱۰۰۶ م) پیدا شدند، ایشان مؤلف چند رسایل اند، لکن شهرت ایشان بمبانی برعناجات است که خیلی مقبول است - و ایشان در مجامع تذکیر و موعظت بر شرف و علم و حال و سیرت مومنان کرام اصلاً می فرمودند

از مرتبه لاهوت نزول فرماید و از جَبَرُوت و مَلَكُوت بگذرد سیر او منتهی به عالم نَسُوت میشود، و اینکه صوفیه مراتب نزول را بعضی چهار بعضی پنج قرار داده اند اشاره باین معنی است •

## ۸ — بیان آواز

آواز از همان نفس الرحمن است که بوقت ایجاد بلفظ «کن» ظاهر شد، (۱) آن آواز را نقرای هند سرسَنی گویند، و جمیع آوازا و صَوْتها و صداها از آن آواز پیدا گشته،  
هر کجا بشنوی چو نغمه آریست  
که شنید این چنین صدای دراز

و این آواز که ناد باشد نزد موحدان هند بر سه قسم است، اول آنَهت یعنی آوازیکه همیشه بود و هست و خواهد بود و صوفیه این آواز را آوازِ مُطلق و سلطانِ الاذکار گویند که قدیم است و احساسِ مها اگس ازین است، و این آواز را در نیابند مگر اکبر آگاه هر دو قوم - دوهم آهت یعنی آوازیکه از زمین

که آن را در قید کفایت آورده «طبقات مبد الله انصاری» نامهند و نسخه خطی آن که از بیس نادرالوجود است در کتاب خانۀ ایشیاٹک سوسالٹی بنگالہ موجود است (رجوع کنید به فهرست مطهرطبات فارسی کتب خانۀ ایشیاٹک سوسالٹی، صفحه ۷۸ تا صفحه ۸۳) -  
و مولانا جلی کتب نفحات الانس را (چنانکه خود در دیباچه می نگارد) بیشتر از طبقات شیخ الاسلام اخذ کرده - وفات شیخ الاسلام در سنه ۴۸۱ هـ (مطابق سنه ۱۰۸۸ م) واقع شده •

(۱) این عالم بعضی ارادۀ حق تعالی که بلفظ «کن» ظاهر شد بر وجود آمد، چنانکه حق تعالی میگوید: **بَدِيعُ السَّمَوَاتِ وَالْأَرْضِ وَإِذَا قَضَىٰ أَمْرًا فَإِنَّمَا يَقُولُ لَهُ كُنْ فَيَكُونُ** (قرآن مجید، ۲: ۱۱۷) •

چیزی بجیزی بی ترکیب الفاظ پیدا شود، سیوم سبد که بترکیب الفاظ پیدا شود و آواز سبد را بسرستی مناسبت است، و از همین آواز اسم اعظم که میان اهل اسلام است و کلمه که فقرای هند آن را بید مکمه گویند (۱) - ا - و - م ظاهر شد، و معنی این (۲) اسم اعظم آنست که اوست صاحب سه صفت که ایجاد و ابقا و انفاست، و فتحه و ضمه و کسره که آن را اکار، و کار و مکار گویند از همین ظاهر شده، و مر این اسم را صورتی خاص است نزد موحدان هند که باسم اعظم ما مشابَهت تمام دارد و نشان عنصر آب و آتش و خاک و باد و ذات بصت نیز درین ظاهر است •

(۱) اوم - لفظیست بغایت متبرک در میان هند، که قبل از خواندن کتب مذهبی این لفظ را بر زبان می آورند، و از غایت متبرک بودن آن دست بردهن گذاشته در بر آوردن این لفظ اشتغال می ورزند، و هنوز منطقی نشده که «اوم» چه معنی مخصوصی دارد - بعضی گویند که این حرف اول ادینی و ورما و مترا باشد که مجموع آنها «اوم» شده، یعنی او خداوندیست، پیدا کننده، و دارنده و فنا کننده، و داراشکوه در دیباچه ترجمه اینکنت قرآن مجید را «اوم الکتاب» میگوید •

(۲) چنانکه در باب «اوم» محقق نشده که چه صفتی مخصوصی دارد در باره «اسم اعظم» هم متعین نگشته که اطلاق خصوصی آن بر کدام اسم از اسمای خدا باشد بعضی گویند که مراد از «اسم اعظم» «الهی» باشد و بعضی «القیوم» و «الرحمن» و «الرحیم» گویند •

در آصف اللغات مؤلفه شمس العلماء احمد عبدالعزیز نایبی نواب عربزیر جنگ بهادر صفحه ۲۶۸۴ نوشته، اسم اعظم (اصطلاح) بقول صاحب بحر و نجات اسم بزرگ است از جمیع اسمای حق تعالی و در تعیین آن اختلاف، نزد بعضی الله و نزد بعضی صمد و نزد بعضی الهی القیوم و نزد بعضی الرحمن الرحیم و نزد بعضی مهیمن - صاحب آنلد بحواله کشف گوید که نزد قاضی حمیدالدین ناگوری اسم اعظم «هو» باشد که او اول از

## ۹ — بیان نور

نور سه قسم است - اگر بصفّت جلال ظاهر شود یا برنگِ آفتاب است یا برنگِ یاقوت یا برنگِ آتش - و اگر بصفّت جمال ظاهر شود یا برنگِ ماه است یا برنگِ نُقْرَه یا برنگِ مروارید یا برنگِ آب، و نورِ ذات که مَنزّه است از صفات آن را جز لولیلی خدا که حقُّ سُبْحَانَهُ تَعَالَى در حقِّ ایشان فرموده: **يَهْدِي اللَّهُ لِنُورٍ مِّنْ نَّشَأُوهُ** (۱)، دیگری در نمی یابد، یعنی هدایت میکند الله تعالی هرکرا میخواست بنورِ خود، و آن نورِ است که چون شخص در خواب شود یا چشم پوشیده بنشیند، نه بچشم بیند و نه بگوش شنود و نه بزبان گوید و نه به بینی بوید و نه بلامسه احساس کند، و حال آنکه در خواب همیشه این همه کارها بیک چیز کند و محتاجِ اعضاء و حواسِ ظاهری و روشنائی چراغ نباشد و باصرة و سامعه و ذایقه و شامه و لامسه عین یکدیگر شوند و یکذات گردند، آن را نورِ ذات گویند، و آن نورِ خداست **جَلَّ شَأْنُهُ** -

سرادقاتِ عربّ در عالم ظهور آمده و هویک حرف است و حرف واو از اشباع ضمّه منقول شده و او اسم ذات مطلق باشد نه معلول و مشتق ... و بتفاتیق جمله عشاق 'هو' مشتق و او منتهای اسم الله است و هرچه از راه عبادت در سائر اسماست آن را اشارتی و در دالراً هو است - آورده اند که اسم هو اصل و اُمّ جمله اسماست چنانکه سوراً فاتحه اصل و اُمّ تمام قرآن ... عبد الرزاق کلثی در معنوی اسم اعظم این دو بیت فرموده •

اسم اعظم جامع اسماء بود صورت او معنوی اشیا بود  
اسم دریا و تعیینِ مرج او این کسی داند که او از ما بود

• ظهوری •

نیارد زدن نا دم از عشق هرکس . طلسمی بر این اسم اعظم به بندم

ایدوست فکر کن که چه گفتم که جای فراست و فراست و رسول خدا صَلَّى اللهُ عَلَيْهِ وَسَلَّمَ در تعریف این فکر فرموده تَفَكَّرُ سَاعَةً خَيْرٌ مِنْ عِبَادَةِ سِنَةٍ، یعنی این فکریست که ساعتی درین فکر بودن بهتر از عمل آدمی و پرست -

و نوریکه از آیه کریمه اللهُ نُورُ السَّمَوَاتِ وَالْأَرْضِ، یعنی الله تعالی نور آسمانها و زمینها است مفهوم میگردد آن را فقرای هند چون سرورپ و سوا پرکس و سپن پرکس گویند، یعنی این نور همیشه خود بخود روشن است خواه در عالم نماید خواه ننماید - چنانچه صوفیه نور را بمنور تفسیر میکنند و ایشان (اهل هند) نیز بمنور تعبیر کرده اند - و ترجمه این آیه کریمه که اللهُ نُورٌ

السَّمَوَاتِ وَالْأَرْضِ چنین است که الله تعالی نور آسمانها و زمینها است،

(مَثَلُ نُورٍ كَمِشْكُوتٍ فِيهَا مِصْبَاحٌ) و مَثَلِ نُورٍ أَوْ مِثْلُهَا طَاقِجَةٌ اسْتِ كَهْ دِرَانِ

مِصْبَاحٌ بَاشِدْ، (الْمِصْبَاحُ فِي زُجَاجَةٍ) و آن چراغ در شیشه بود، (الزُّجَاجَةُ

كَانَهَا كُوكَبٌ دَرِيٌّ) و شیشه گویا که ستارا درخشنده است که، (يُوقَدُ مِنْ

شَجَرَةٍ مُبْرَكَةٍ زَيْتُونَةٍ لَشَرْقِيَّةٍ وَ لَا غَرْبِيَّةٍ) افروخته شده است از درخت مبارک

زیتون که نه شرقی است و نه غربی، و (يَكَادُ زَيْتُهَا يُضِيُّ) و لَوْ لَمْ تَمْسَسْهُ نَارٌ

نزدیک است که روغن آن زیتون مبارک روشنی بخشد با آنکه آتش بار

نرسیده باشد و (نُورٌ عَلَى نُورٍ) نور بر نور، (يَهْدِي اللهُ لِلنُّورِ

مَنْ يَشَاءُ (۱)) و راه مینماید الله تعالی بنور خود هرکرا که میخواهد -

امّا آنچه که فقیر فهمیده این باشد که مراد از مشكُوتِ که طاق باشد عالم

اجسام است و مراد از مصباح که چراغ باشد نور ذات است و مراد

از شیشه روح است که مانند ستروا درخشنده است که از روشنی آن چراغ این شیشه هم مانند چراغ می نماید، و "انروخنه شده است آن چراغ" عبارت از نور وجود است و از "شجره مبارک" ذات حق سُبْحَانَهُ تَعَالَى مراد است که منزه است از جهات شرقی و غربی - و مراد از "زیت" روح اعظم است که نه ازلی و نه ابدی است، یعنی آن زیت از غایت لطافت و صفا خود بخود روشن و تلبان است و محتاج بنورختن نیست، چنانچه استاد ابوبکر واسطی<sup>(۱)</sup> عَلَيْهِ الرَّحْمَةُ در تعریف روح میفرماید که زجاجه روح بمرتبه روشن است که محتاج لمس ناپسند و شعاع نیست و از غایت استعداد ذاتی نزدیک است که خود بخود روشن شود. و این نور زیت "نور علی نور" است یعنی از نهایت صفا و روشنی نورزیست بر نور، و باین روشنائی نمی بیند کسی او را تا او خود هدایت نکند بنور وحدت خود - پس مراد از مجموعه این آیة کریمه آنست که حق سُبْحَانَهُ تَعَالَى بنور ذات خود در پرده های لطیف و نورانی ظاهر است و هیچ ظلمتی و حجابی در میان نیست و نور ذات در پرده روح الارواح ظاهر است و روح الارواح در پرده ارواح و ارواح در پرده اجسام - همچنین "چراغ" بآن نور زیت در پرده شیشه تابان و ظاهر است و "شیشه" در پرده طاقچه - و اینها اکتساب نور از نور ذات میکنند لهذا روشنی بر روشنی افزوده •

(۱) محمد بن موسی المروفي، ابوبکر الواسطي، از اصحاب حضرت جنید و حضرت ابوالحسن نوري بودند، ولادتشان قبل از عشرين و ثلثمائة در شهر مرو بوقوم آمد - شيخ الاسلام مي فرماید که ایشان امام توحيد بودند - برای تفصيل رجوع کنید به نعاقد الانس صفحه ۱۷۱ و تذكرة الاوليا (مرتبه ۱۸ کلمه نکلن) صفحه ۲۶۵ تا صفحه ۲۸۱ •



## ۱۰ - بیان رویت

رویتِ خدای تعالی را موحدانِ همد ساچمات کار گویند یعنی دیدنِ خدا بچشم سر - بدانکه در دیدنِ خدای تعالی در دنیا و آخرت بچشم ظاهر و باطن هیچ یکی از انبیاء علیه السلام و اولیای کامل قُدس الله سره شکی و شبهی نیست و جمیع اهل کتاب و کاملان و بینایان هر ملت باین معنی ایمان دارند، چه اهل قرآن و چه اهل بید و چه اهل توریت و انجیل و زبور - و از ناهمیدگان و نابیایان ملت خود بود هر که انکار رویت نماید، چه ذات مقدسی که بر همه چیز قادر باشد بر نمودن خود هم چرا قدرت نداشته باشد و این مسئله را علمای سنت و الجماعت خوب بی پرده گفته اند - اما اگر ذاتِ بعثت را گفته اند که توان دید این معال است چه ذاتِ بعثت لطیف و بی تعیین است و متعین نکردد و در پرده لطافت جلوه گر بشود پس نتوان دید و چنین رویت معال باشد - و آنچه گفته اند که در آخرت توان دید و در دنیا نتوان دید اصلی ندارد زیرا که هرگاه کمالِ قدرت درو هست هر طور و هر جا و هر گاه که خواهد قادر بر نمودن خود است و هر که اینجا ندید مشکل است که تواند در آنجا دید، چنانچه خود در آیه کریمه فرموده و مَنْ كَانَ فِي هَذِهِ أَعْمَىٰ فَهُوَ فِي الْآخِرَةِ أَعْمَىٰ (۱)، یعنی هر که درین دنیا از دولت دیدار من محروم است در آخرت نیز محروم خواهد ماند از نعمتِ جمالِ من - و منکرانِ رویت که حکمای معتزله و شیعه باشند درین مسئله خطای عظیم کرده اند، چرا که اگر میگفتند که دیدنِ ذاتِ بعثت ممکن نیست بهر حال صورتی داشت و چون

ایشان جمیع اقسام رویت را منکر شده اند این نهایتِ خطاست زیرا که اکثری از انبیای مرسل و اولیای اکمل خدا را بچشم ظاهر دیده و کلام با احترام او را بیواسطه شنیده اند و هرگاه که ایشان شنیدند کلام حق را از همه جهت قبل اند چرا دیدن را هم از همه جهت قابل نباشند - البتّه باشند - و چنانکه ایمان بخدا و ملائکه و کتابها و انبیاء و قیامت و قضا و قدر و خیر و شر و خانهای متبرک و غیره فرض است ایمان برویت هم فرض و لازم است - و اختلافی که از ناسیدگان علمای سنت و الجماعت کرده اند در معنی و لفظ این حدیث که عائشه صدیقه پرسید از حضرت رسول صلعم که هل رأیت ربک یعنی ایا دیدی تو پروردگار خود را - فرمود نُورٌ اِنِّی اَرَاهُ یعنی نورِیست که می بینم او را - آنها این حدیث را نُورٌ اِنِّی رَاهُ خوانده اند، یعنی نورِیست چگونه بینم او را - لکن این دلیل فا دیدن پیغمبر صَلَّى اللهُ عَلَيْهِ وَسَلَّمَ نمیشود، اگر معنی اول گیرد، اشاره برویت نام اوست در پرده نور، و اگر چنین خوانده شود که نورِیست چگونه بینم او را اشاره بذاتِ بحت و بیرونک است - این اختلاف عبارتی نیست بلکه اعجاز نبویست که در یک حدیث دو مسئله بیان توان کرد - و آیه کریمه وَجُوهٌ يَوْمَئِذٍ نَّاصِرَةٌ اِلَى رَبِّهَا نَاظِرَةٌ (۱) یعنی در آن روزیکه روهها تر و تازه خواهند بود و بیننده نسوی پروردگار خود برهانی ظاهر است برویت پروردگار جَلَّ شَانُهُ - و آیه کریمه لَا تُدْرِكُهُ الْاَبْصَارُ وَهُوَ يُدْرِكُ الْاَبْصَارَ وَهُوَ اللَّطِيفُ الْخَبِيرُ (۲) اشاره به بیرنگیست یعنی نمی بینند بصرها در مرتبه اطلاق و بیرنگی و او همه را می بیند و او در نهایت لطافت و بیرنگیست و درین آیه کریمه اسم "هو" که واقع شده اشاره به نادیدن ذات

(۱) قرآن مجید، ۷۵: ۲۲

(۲) قرآن مجید، ۶: ۱۰۴

بعثت است - دیدن خدای تعالی پنج قسم است - قسم اول، در خواب بچشم دل، دوم دیدن در بیداری بچشم سر، سوم، در میان بیداری و خواب که آن بیخودی خاص است، چهارم در یک تعیین خاص پنجم دیدن یک ذات واحد است در کثرات تعینات عوالم ظاهر و باطن، و این چنین دید حضرت رسول صلعم در وقتیکه خود نبود در میان ورائی و مرئی یکی بود، و خواب و بیداری و بیخودی آر یکی می نمود و چشم ظاهر و باطن آر یکی شده بود، مرتبه کمال رویت اینست و این را دنیا و آخرت درکار نیست و همه جا و همه وقت میسر است (۱) ه

## ۱۱ - بیان اسمای الله تعالی

بدانکه اسمای الله تعالی بی نهایت است و از حدّ حصر بیرون - ذات مطلق و محبت و صرف و غیب الغیب و حضرت واجب الوجود را بزبان

(۱) داراشکوة ندر سکینة الاولیا (از صفحه ۶۰ تا صفحه ۶۶) مسئله رویت را بالتفصیل در بحث آورده، و اسناد بسیاری باثبات ادعای خودش درج کرده که نقل همه آنها باعث تطویل شود، پس بر همین اختصار اکتفا نموده شد -

یکی از اصحاب کبار بمن گفته که روزی حضرت میلن جیو را پرسیدم که در نهایت جزوی، مذکور است روزی ابن شقیق به اباذر غفّاری گفت که اگر رسول الله را دیدمی ازو پرسیدمی که خدا را دیدی یا نه، اباذر غفّاری گفت که من از آنحضرت صلعم پرسیدم گفت نورائی آراء یعنی او نورست همچگونه ممکن نیست که او را بینم، پوشیده نماند که در عبارت بالا تعجیب خطی واقع شده یعنی «نورائی آراء» یعنی نورست که بی بینم او را -

حضرت میلن جیو بداراشکوة فرمود که اگر معنی اول گیریم اشاره بوجود صرف ذات حق باشد و چنین رویت برای انبیا هم محال باشد، لکن اگر معنی دوم را اختیار کنیم مراد این باشد که رویت او در وقت تزلزل بوده انقلاب، و لباس پوشی ممکن است

فقرای هند اسن و نرگن و نرنگر و نرنجن و ست و چت گویند - اگر علم را بار نسبت دهند که اهل اسلام او را علیم میگویند فقرای هند آن را چتن نامند و اسم الحق را انفت گویند، قادر را سمرته، و سمیع را سرتا و بصیر را درشنا خوانند، و اگر کلام را بآن ذات مطلق نسبت دهند و کتا نامند و الله را ارم و هو را سه و فرشته را بریان ایشان دیوتا گویند، و مظهراتم را اوتار نامند، و اوتار آن باشد که قدرت الهی آنچه در ظاهر شونا و از وجود او بنظر آید در هیچ یکی از افراد نوع او در آن وقت ظاهر نشود، و وحی را که بر پیغمبر نازل شود اکس بانمی نامند و اکس بانمی بجهت آن گویند که پیغمبر صَلَّى اللهُ عَلَيْهِ وَسَلَّمَ فرموده که صعب ترین اوقات بر من وقت وحی است که میشنوم وحی را مانند آواز جرس یا مانند آواز زنبور، و چون این آواز از اکس ظاهر میشود اکس بانمی میگویند - و کتب آسمانی را بید گویند، و خوبان جتیان را که پری باشند نچیرا گویند و بدای آنها را که دیو و شیاطین اند راجهس گویند و آدمی را منکبه، و بی را رکمی و نبی را مها سده نامند •

## ۱۲ — بیان نبوت و ولایت

انبیا بر سه قسم اند، یکی آنکه خدا را دیده باشند بچشم، خواه بچشم ظاهر خواه بچشم باطن - دیگر آنکه آواز خدا شنیده باشند خواه آواز عرف،

و شاعرانه موصوف خیالات خودش را در باب مسئله رویت بوضاحت تمام درین رباعی بیان نموده ( سکینه الاولیا صفحه ۶۱ ) •

آنانکه خدا در آن زمان می بینند • اول تو بدای درین جهان می بینند  
هدای خدا درین و آن یکسانست • هر لحظه بظاهر و نهی می بینند

خواه آواز مرکب از حروف کلمه - دیگر آنکه فرشته را دیده باشند یا آواز فرشته را شنیده باشند - و نبوت و ولایت بر سه قسم است، یکی نبوت و ولایت تفریه، دوم نبوت و ولایت تشبیهی، سیوم نبوت و ولایت جامع التشبیه والتفریه - اول نبوت تفریه، چون نبوت حضرت نوح علیه السلام که خدا را بتفریه دید و دعوت کرد و امت بجهت تفریه ایمان نیلورد مگر قلیلی و همه در بحر فنا غرق شدند چون زاهدان زمان ما که بتفریه خدا مریدانرا خوانند و هیچکس از آن مریدان عارف نشود و از قول آنها نفعی نبرد و در راه سلوک و طریقت فنا و هلاک گردد و بخدا نرسد -

دوم نبوت تشبیهی چون نبوت موسی است علیه السلام که خود خدا را در آتش درخت دید و از ابر سخن حق شنید و اکثر امت از تقلید موسی در تشبیه افتاده گوساله پرست شدند و عصیان ورزیدند و امروز بعضی از مقلدان زمان ما آنانکه محض تقلید کاملان پیشه کرده اند و برین زندگانی کفند از تفریه دور افتاده در تشبیه فرو رفتند و بدین صورتهای خوب و مرغوب در لهو و لعب گرفتار اند و پیروی ایشان نشاید -

• نظم •

هر صورت دلکش که ترا زوی نمود  
خواهد فلک از چشم تو اش زود بود  
زور دل بکسی چه که در اطوار وجود  
بود است و همیشه با تو خواهد بود

سیوم نبوت جامع التفریه و التشبیه، یعنی جمع کفنداً تفریه و تشبیه و آن نبوت محمدیست صلی الله علیه و سلم که مطلق و مقید رنگ و بیرونک و نزدیک و دور را یکجا کرده، و اشاره باین مرتبه است درین آیه کریمه

که لَيْسَ كَمِثْلِهِ شَيْءٌ وَهُوَ السَّمِيعُ الْبَصِيرُ<sup>(۱)</sup> یعنی نیست مثل او چیزی و این اشاره بمرتبه تفریه است و شنوای و بینای اشاره به تشبیه بود - و این مرتبه بلندترین و اعلیٰ ترین مرتبه جامعیت و خاتمت است که مخصوص بذات آنسور صلعم است، پس رسول ما همه عالم را از شرق تا غرب فرو گرفته - و نبوت تفریهی محروم است از نبوت تشبیهی و نبوت تشبیهی عاریست از نبوت تفریهی، و نبوت جامع شامل تفریه و تشبیه است چون هُوَ الْأَوَّلُ وَالْآخِرُ وَالظَّاهِرُ وَالْبَاطِنُ<sup>(۲)</sup> - همچنین ولایت مخصوص است بکاملان این آمت که حق تعالی در وصف ایشان فرموده كُنْتُمْ خَيْرَ أُمَّةٍ أُخْرِجَتْ لِلنَّاسِ<sup>(۳)</sup> یعنی بهترین امتیان ایشانند که جمع کننده تشبیه و تفریه اند - چنانچه در زمان پیغمبر ما صَلَّى اللهُ عَلَيْهِ وَسَلَّمَ از اولیا<sup>(۴)</sup> ابوبکر و عمر و عثمان و علی و حسن و حسین و سَنَةُ بَاقِيَةٍ و عَشْرًا مَبَشْرَةً و اکبر مهاجر و انصار و اهل صوفیه بودند و از آنجمله در تابعین چون اویس قرنی و غیره - و در زمان دیگر چون ذوالنون مصری و فضیل عیاض و معروف کرخی و ابراهیم ادهم و بشر حافی و سری السقطی و بایزید بسطامی و اسناد ابوالقاسم جنیدی و سهل بن عبد الله التستری و ابوسعید خراز و رویم و ابو الحسن الکوفی و ابراهیم خواص، و ابوبکر شبلی و ابوبکر واسطی و امثال ایشان - و در زمان دیگر چون ابوسعید ابوالخیر و شیخ الاسلام خواجه عبدالله انصاری و شیخ احمد جام و محمد معشوق طوسی و احمد غزالی و ابوالقاسم گرگانی - و در زمان دیگر

(۱) قرآن مجید، ۴۲: ۱۱ (۲) قرآن مجید، ۵۷: ۳ •

(۳) قرآن مجید، ۳: ۱۰۹ •

(۴) برای ترجمه احوال این اولیای کامل رجوع کنید به ترجمه انگلیسی •

چون پیر من شیخ محی الدین عبدالقادر جیلانی و ابو مدین المغربی و شیخ  
 محی الدین ابن العربی و شیخ نجم الدین کبری و شیخ فرید الدین عطار  
 و مولانا جلال الدین رومی - و در زمان دیگر چون خواجه معین الدین چشتی  
 و خواجه بہاء الدین نقشبند و خواجه احرار و مولانا عبد الرحمن جامی - و در  
 زمان دیگر چون شیخ من جنید ثانی شاه میر و استاد من میان بلری و مرشد  
 من ملا شاه و شاه محمد دلریا و شیخ طیب سرھندی و باوا لال بیراکی •

### ۱۳ - بیان برہماند

مراد از برہماند "کل" و تقیدِ ظهورِ حضرت وجود است بصورتِ کُرّہ  
 مدور و چون اوزا بہیچ طرف میل و تعلق نیست و نسبت او با ہمہ برابر  
 ست و ہمہ پیدایش و نمایش در میان این ست لهذا موحدانِ ہند این را  
 برہماند گویند •

### ۱۴ - بیان جہات

موحدانِ اسلام ہر یک از مشرق و مغرب و شمال و جنوب و فوق و تحت  
 را جہتی اعتبار نموده شش جہت گفته اند و موحدانِ ہند جہات را دہ  
 میگویند یعنی مابین مشرق و مغرب و شمال و جنوب را نیز جہتی اعتبار  
 نموده دہ دشا می نامند •

### ۱۵ - بیان آسمانہا

آسمانہا کہ آنرا لکن میگویند بطور اہل ہند ہشت است، ہفت از ان مقرر  
 ہفت کواکب سیارہ است کہ زحل و مشتری و مریخ و شمس و زہرہ و عطارد

و قمر باشد و بزبان اهل هند این هفت ستاره را هفت نَجْمَتَر یعنی سَنَبِچَر و بَرَسپَت و مَنگَل و سَورج و سَکرو بَدَه و چَندرا ماس میگویند - و آسمانی که جمیع ثوابت در آن اند آن را هشتم میدانند و همین آسمان را حکما فلک هشتم و فلک ثوابت میگویند که بزبان اهل شرع کُرسی است و سَع کُرسیهِ السَّمَوَاتِ وَالْأَرْضِ (۱) یعنی آسمانها و زمینها در کُرسی میگذرند و نهم که آن را مها اگلس میگویند داخل آسمانها نکرده اند جهت آنکه آن محیط همه است و کُرسی و آسمانها و زمینها را احاطه کرده است .

## ۱۶ — بیان زمین

زمین نزد اهل هند هفت طبقه است که آن را سَپت تال میگویند و هر طبقه این یک نام دارد، اَتَل بَتَل سَوَتَل تَلاتَل مَهاتَل رَساتَل و پاتَل - بطور اهل اسلام نیز زمین هفت است بموجب آیه کریمه **اللَّهُ الَّذِي خَلَقَ سَبْعَ سَمَوَاتٍ وَمِنَ الْأَرْضِ مِثْلَهُنَّ (۲)** یعنی الله تعالی آن خدائست که خلق گردانید هفت آسمانها را و از زمین هم مانند آن آسمانها .

## ۱۷ — بیان قسمت زمین

رُبُع مسکون را حکما بهفت طبقه قسمت کرده اند و هفت اقلیم میگویند و اهل هند آن را سَپت دَیپ مَنی نامند و این هفت طبقه زمین را بر روی زمین هم مثل پوست پیاز میزدانند بلکه بمراتب مثل پایه های فردبان تصور میکنند - و هفت کوه را که اهل هند آنها را سَپت کَلچَل گویند برگرد هر

(۱) قرآن مجید، ۲: ۲۵۵ • (۲) قرآن مجید، ۹۵: ۱۲ •



زمیني کوهي را محیط میدانند و نام کوه ها اینست، اول سیر دروم سرپت سیوم همکوت چهارم همون پنجم مکده ششم پرجاتر هفتم کیلاس - چنانچه در آیه کریمه وَالْجِبَالُ أَوْتَادًا (۱) واقع است یعنی (گردانیدیم) کوه ها را میطهای زمین - و برگرد هر یکی از آن هفت کوه هفت دریا اند که محیط هر کوه اند و آن را سپت سمندر میگویند و نامهای این هفت دریا این اند اول لور سمندر یعنی دریای شور، دوم آنچه رس سمندر یعنی دریای آب نیشکر، سیوم سرا سمندر یعنی دریای شراب، چهارم گهرت سمندر یعنی دریای روغن زرد، پنجم دده سمندر یعنی دریای جفروت، ششم کبیر سمندر یعنی دریای شیر، هفتم سواد جل یعنی دریای آب زلال - و بودن دریا بعدد هفت ازین آیه معلوم میشود وَ لَوْ أَنَّ مَا فِي الْأَرْضِ مِنْ شَجَرَةٍ أَقْلَامٌ وَالْبَحْرُ يَدْعَا مِنْ بَعْدِهِ سَبْعَةُ أَبْحُرٍ مَا نَفِدَتْ كَلِمَاتُ اللَّهِ (۲) یعنی بدرستیکه از درختان که بر زمین اند قلمها شود و آن هفت دریاها سیاهی شوند تمام نمیشود کلمات خدا یعنی مقدرات خدا و در هر زمینی و کوهی و دریایی اقسام مخلوقات هستند - و زمین و کوه و دریا که فوق همه زمینها و کوه ها و دریاها است بطور محققان هند آن را سرگ خوانند که بهشت و جنت باشد - و زمین و دریا که تحت همه زمینها و کوه ها و دریاها ست آن را نرک گویند که عبارت از دروخ است و جهنم - و تحقیق موحدان هند است که بهشت و دروخ از همین عالم که آن را برهماند گویند خارج نیست، و این هفت آسمان را که مقر این هفت ستاره اند میگویند که برگرد بهشت میگردند نه بر بالای بهشت - و سقف بهشت را من اکس میدانند که عرش باشد و زمین بهشت را گوسی •

(۲) قرآن مجید، ۳۱ : ۲۷ •

(۱) قرآن مجید • ۷۸ : ۷ •



و ذَلِكَ بَعْدَ مَا يَمْسُكُونَ فِيهَا أَحْقَابًا - یعنی می آید بر دوزخ زمانی که نباشد هیچکس از دوزخیان در آن بعد از آنکه مدتِ طویل در آن مانده باشند - و بر آوردن اهلِ بهشت را از بهشت آن باشد که پیش از بر طرف شدنِ آسمانها و زمینها اگر خدا خواهد ایشان را در فردوسِ اعلیٰ در آرد که عطای او بی نهایت است و نیز ازین آیه کریمه ثبت شده وَ رِضْوَانٌ مِّنَ اللَّهِ أَكْبَرُ ذَلِكَ هُوَ الْعِزُّ الْعَظِيمُ (۱) یعنی الله تعالی را بهشتی است بزرگتر از بهشتها که اهل همد آن را بیکتبه گویند و این بزرگترین بستگاریست بطورِ موحدانِ همد •

## ۱۹ — بیان قیامت

بطورِ موحدانِ همد اینست که بعد از بودن در دوزخ و بهشت چون مدتهای طویل بگذرد مها پرلی شود که عبارت از قیامتِ کبری است که از آیه کریمه فَلَا جَادَتِ الطَّامَّةُ الْكُبْرَى (۲) یعنی وقتیکه بیاید قیامتِ کبری مفهوم میشود و ازین آیه نیز معلوم میشود وَ نَفِمْ فِي الصُّورِ فَصَعِقُ مَنْ فِي السَّمَوَاتِ وَ مَنْ فِي الْأَرْضِ إِلَّا مَنْ شَاءَ اللَّهُ (۳) یعنی وقتیکه دمیده میشود مور پس بیهوش میشود هرکه در آسمانها و زمینها ست مگر شخصی را که خواسته باشد خدای تعالی از بیهوش شدن نگاه دارد و آن جماعتِ عارفان باشد که محفوظ اند از بیهوشی و بیخبری هم در دنیا هم در آخرت - و بعد از بر طرف شدنِ آسمانها و زمینها و فانی شدنِ دوزخها و بهشتها و تمام شدنِ مدتِ عمرِ برهماند و نبودنِ برهماند اهلِ بهشت و دوزخ را مُکْتِ خواهد شد، یعنی

(۱) قرآن مجید، ۹ : ۷۲ + (۲) قرآن مجید، ۷۹ : ۳۴ •

(۳) ایضاً ۳۹ : ۶۸ •

هر دو در حضرت ذات مستهلک و معر شوند - بموجب این آیه کُلُّ مَنْ عَلَيْهَا فَانٍ وَيَبْقَى وَجْهٌ رَبِّكَ ذُو الْجَلَالِ وَالْإِكْرَامِ (۱) .

## ۲۰ - بیان مکت

مکت عبارت از استهلاک و معر شدن تعینات باشد در حضرت ذات که از آیه کریمه وَ رِضْوَانٌ مِّنَ اللَّهِ أَكْبَرُ ذَلِكَ هُوَ الْغَوْرُ الْعَظِيمُ (۲) ظاهر میشود و داخل شدن در رضوان اکبر که فو در سرِ اعلی باشد رستگاری بزرگ است که مکت باشد و مکت بر سه قسم است - اول جیون مکت یعنی رستگاری در زندگانی و جیون مکت نزد ایشان آنست که در ایام حیات خود بدولت عرفان و شناسائی حق تعالی رستگار و خلاص باشد و در همین جهان همه چیز را یکی بیند و یکی داند و اعمال و انعام و حرکات و سکناات و نیک و بد را نسبت بخود و بغیر نکند و خود را باجمیع اشیای موجوده عین حق شناسد و در همه مراتب حق را جلوه گر داند و تمام بر همانند را که صوفیای کرام آن را عالم گبری گفته اند و صورت کلیت خداست بمنزله بدن جسمانی خدا گرداند - عنصر اعظم که مها اکس باشد بمنزله سوچم سر بر یعنی بدن لطیف خدا و ذات خدا بمنزله روح آن بدن و آن را یک شخص معین دانسته از ذره تا نکه با عوالم ظاهر و باطن سواى ذات آن یگانه بی همتا نبیند و نداند - چنانکه یک انسان که او را عالم صغیر گفته اند باختلافِ عضوهای مختلفه متکثره یک فرد است و بکثرتِ اعضاء ذات او متعدد نیست، آن ذات واحد را نیز کثرت تعینات متعدد نشناسد،

(۲) قرآن مجید، ۹ : ۷۲ .

(۱) قرآن مجید، ۵۵ : ۲۶ ، ۲۷ .

## • بیت •

جهان یکسر چه ارواح و چه اجسام • بُرد شخصی معین عالمش نام  
بس حق سُبْحَانَهُ تَعَالَى را روح و جانِ این شخصِ معین داند که از هیچ سر  
موی جدا نیست - چنانچه شیخ سعدالدین حموی (۱) فرماید، • رباعی •

حق جانِ جهان است و جهان جمله بدن

ارواح و ملائک و حواس این همه تن

افلاک و عناصر و موالید و اعضاء

توحید همین است و دگر شیوه و فن

• همچنین موحّدانِ هند مثل بیلَس و غیره تمام بر همانند را که عالمِ کبیر است  
شخصِ واحد دانسته عضوهای بدنِ او را چنین بیان نموده اند بجهت آنکه  
سوفی متقی در هر وقت بر هر چه نظر کند بداند که بر فلان عضوِ مَهِ پُرس که  
یَنجَا عبارت از ذاتِ حق سُبْحَانَهُ تَعَالَى است نظر داشتم - پاتال که  
لبقّه هفتمِ زمین باشد کفِ پایِ مَهِ پُرس است، رساتل که طبقه ششم  
زمین باشد پشتِ پایِ مَهِ پُرس است، و شیاطینِ انگشتهای پای  
مَهِ پُرس اند و جانتزانِ سواری شیطانِ ناخندهای پایِ مَهِ پُرس اند -  
سهاتل که طبقه پنجمِ زمین است شتالنگِ مَهِ پُرس است - تلال که طبقه  
چهارمِ زمین بود ساقِ مَهِ پُرس است - سوتل که طبقه سیومِ زمین باشد زانوی  
مَهِ پُرس است - بتل که طبقه درمِ زمین است زانِ مَهِ پُرس است اتل که  
لبقّه اولِ زمین است عضوِ مخصوصِ مَهِ پُرس است - کال یعنی زمانه  
تتارِ مَهِ پُرس است - پرجانت دپوتا که باعبِ توالد و تناسل تمام عال

(۱) برای حالات حضرت سعد الدین حموی رجوع کنید بفرجه، انگلیسی •

است علامتِ مردی و قوتِ رجولیتِ مها پُرس است - بلان نطفه  
 مها پُرس است - بهلولک یعنی از زمین تا آسمان پائین نافِ مها پُرس  
 است - سه کوهِ جنوبی دستِ راستِ مها پُرس است و سه کوهِ شمالی  
 دستِ چپِ مها پُرس است و شمیر پرتِ شرینِ مها پُرس است -  
 روشنی صبحِ کاذبِ نارِ مغزوقِ جامهٔ مها پُرس است، روشنی صبحِ صادق  
 و نگِ سفیدِ جامهٔ چادرِ مها پُرس است (که اَلْکِبْرِيَاءُ رِدَائِيْ اشارةٔ بآن میکند)  
 و وقتِ شام که رنگِ شفق دارد پارچهٔ سترِ عورتِ مها پُرس است (که  
 الْعَظْمَةُ اِزَارِيْ کنایهٔ بآن میکند) - سمندر یعنی بحرِ محیطِ حلقه و عمقِ نافِ  
 مها پُرس است و بدوانلِ مِکَانِ آتشیست که آبِ هفت دریا را حالا هم جذب  
 میکند و طغیانِ شدنِ نمیدهد و در قیامتِ کبری تمام آب را خشک خواهد  
 کرد و این حرارت و گرمیِ معدهٔ مها پُرس است، و دریاهای دیگرِ رگهای  
 مها پُرس است، و چنانکه همه رگها بنافِ میرسد همه دریاهای بسمندر منتهی  
 میگردد - گنگا و جفنا و سرستی شهرگِ مها پُرس است - اَنکَلَا جَمَان  
 بیلا جمونا سکهنفا سرستی بهلولک که بالای بهلولک است و دیوتهای  
 گندهرپا آنجا میباشد و آواز از آنجا برمیخیزد شکمِ مها پُرس است -  
 آنشِ قیامتِ صغریِ اشتهای حاضریِ مها پُرس است، و خشک شدنِ  
 آنها در قیامتِ صغریِ تشنگی (و آب خوردنِ) مها پُرس است - سرگ  
 لوک که بالای بهلولک است و طبقه ایست از طبقاتِ بهشت سینهٔ  
 مها پُرس است که همیشه شادی و خوشحالی و آرام دروست - و جمیع  
 ستاره‌ها از اقسامِ جواهرِ مها پُرس است - بخشش پیش از سوال که جود و

فضل است پستانِ راست و بخشش بعد از سوال که عطاست پستانِ چپ  
 مَها پُرس است - و اعتدال که رجوگن و ستوگن و تموگن باشند و آن را پرکوت  
 گویند دلِ مَها پُرس است، و چنانکه کنول سه رنگ دارد، سفید و سرخ  
 و بفتش، دل هم که بصورتِ کنول است سه صفت دارد، و این از  
 سه رنگِ ظهور است، که برهما و بشن و مهیش باشند - برهما که  
 من هم نام دارد حرکت و اراده دلِ مَها پُرس است، بشن رحم و مهر  
 مَها پُرس است، مهیش قهر و غضبِ مَها پُرس است - ماه تبسم  
 و خوشحالی مَها پُرس است که حرارتِ الم و اندوه را برطرف میسازد و شب  
 کمانِ مَها پُرس است - کوه شمیر پت استخوانِ میانِ پشتِ مَها پُرس است  
 و کوه‌های دستِ راست و چپِ سمر استخوانِ فرعی‌های یعنی پسلی‌های  
 مَها پُرس است، و هشت فرشته که کوتوال اند و اندر که سردارِ آنهاست  
 و کمالِ قوت دارد و بخشیدن و باریدن و نه بخشیدن و نباریدن متعلق باوست  
 هر دو دستِ مَها پُرس اند، دستِ راست بخشش و بارش و دستِ  
 چپ امساکِ بخششِ مَها پُرس است - امچه‌ا که حوزایی بهشت اند  
 خطوطِ کف دستِ مَها پُرس است و فرشته‌ها که آن را چچه می نامند  
 ناخفهای دستِ مَها پُرس است - سه فرشته لوک پال دستِ راست  
 مَها پُرس است، (از بند دست تا انج اگن نام فرشته) و جم فرشته بازوی مَها پُرس  
 است و لوکیال فرشته دستِ چپِ مَها پُرس است، کبیر فرشته زانوی  
 پای مَها پُرس است و کلپ برچه که طوبی باشد عصبی مَها پُرس است،  
 قطب جنوبی کتفِ راست و قطب شمالی کتفِ چپِ مَها پُرس است

و برین نام فرشته لوک پال که موکل آب است و در سمت مغرب میباشد مهره گردن مها پُرس است، انا هت که سلطان الاذکار است آواز باریک مها پُرس است. مهر لوک که بالای سرگ لوک است گلو و گردن مها پُرس است. جن لوک که بالای مهر لوک است روی مبارک مها پُرس است، خواهش عالم زنج مها پُرس است. طمع که در عالم است لب پائین مها پُرس است شرم و حیا لب بالای مها پُرس است، سینه یعنی محبت و الفت بن دندانهای مها پُرس است و خورش همه عالم خوراک مها پُرس است، عنصر آب کام و دهن. مها پُرس است، عنصر آتش زبان مها پُرس است، سرستی قوت ناطقه مها پُرس و چار بید یعنی چار کتاب صدق و راستی گفتار مها پُرس است، مایا یعنی عشق که باعث ایجاد عالم است خنده و خوش طبعی مها پُرس است و هشت جهت عالم هر دو گوش مها پُرس است، اشنی کمار که در قرشته در کمال حسن اند هر دو پره بینی مها پُرس اند، گنده تن مائر یعنی عنصر خاک قوت شامه مها پُرس است. عنصر باد نفس زدن مها پُرس است، میان جن لوک و نپ لوک که طبقه پنجم و ششم بهشت است و از نور ذات پر است نصف جنوبی آن چشم راست و نصف شمالی آن چشم چپ مها پُرس است. و اصل نور که آن را آفتاب ازای گویند قوت بینائی مها پُرس است. تمام آفرینش نگاه لطف مها پُرس است، روز و شب عالم چشم برهم زدن مها پُرس است. متر نام فرشته که موکل دوستی و محبت است و نوسنا نام فرشته که موکل قهر و غضب



است هر دو ابروی مها پُرس است، پت لوک که بالای جن لوک است  
 پیشانی مها پُرس است - و لوک که بالای همه لوکهاست کاسه سر مها پُرس  
 است - آیاتِ توحید و کتباتِ الله امّ الدمانع مها پُرس است ابرهای سپاه که  
 باران مها پُری دارد موی سر مها پُرس است، و نباتات همه کوهها موی بدن  
مها پُرس است، لجهمی که دولت و خوبی عالم است مها پُرس  
 است، آفتاب درخشان مغای بدن مها پُرس است، بهوت اکس مسلمات  
 بدن مها پُرس است، جد اکس روح بدن مها پُرس است، صورت هر فرد  
 انسان خانۀ مها پُرس است، انسان کامل خلوتخانه و محلّ خاص مها پُرس  
 است، چنانچه بفرمود دَاوُد علیه السلام که ای داوُد برای من خانۀ بساز  
 گفت خداوند تو منزهی از خانۀ، فرمود خانۀ من توئی دل را از غیر  
 خالی کن - و هر چه درین برهماند بر سبیل تفصیل است در انسان که  
 نسخه عالم کبیر است بطریق اجمال همه موجود است، کسیکه چنین داند  
 و ببزد اوراست جیون مُکت و در حق اوست آیه کریمه فَرِحِينَ بِمَا آتَاهُمُ  
 اللَّهُ مِنْ فَضْلِهِ (۱) یعنی خوشحال اند آن جماعت بآنچه داده است ایشان  
 را خدای تعالی از فضل خود •

نوم — سرب مُکت یعنی دستگاری همه و آن استهلاک در دانست و آن  
 شامل همه موجودات است و بعد از قیامت کبری و فزای آسمان و زمین  
 و بهشت و دوزخ و نبودن برهماند و نبودن بروز و شب از معویّت در ذات  
 دستگار و خلاص باشند و آیه کریمه وَرِقْوَانُ مِنَ اللَّهِ أَكْبَرُ ذَلِكَ هُوَ الْفَوْزُ

الْمَعْظِيمِ (۱) وَاَلَا اِنَّ اَوْلِيَاءَ اللّٰهِ لَا خَوْفٌ عَلَيْهِمْ وَلَا هُمْ يَحْزَنُونَ (۲) یعنی بدرستیکه عارفانِ خدا را نیست ترسی و نیستند آنها اندوهگین اشاره بهمین مُکّت است •

سیوم — سربدا مُکّت یعنی رستگاری پس - سربدا مُکّت آن باشد که در هر مرتبه که سیرکند خِوَاة در روز خِوَاة در شب خِوَاة در عالم باطن خِوَاة در عالم ظاهر خِوَاة برهماند نماید خِوَاة فَنماید و خِوَاة در ماضی خِوَاة حال و خِوَاة در مستقبل که بهوت بهوشت برتَمَان گریزند عارف و رستگار و خلاص باشد - و هر جا که در آیاتِ قرآنی در بابِ بودن در جَنّت خُلِدِينَ فِيهَا اَبَدًا واقع شده یعنی همیشه خواهند بود در آن بهشت مراد از جَنّت معرفت است و مراد از لفظ اِبدًا اِبدیّتِ این مُکّت است، چه در هر نشاء که باشد استعدادِ معرفت و عَیَاةِ اِزلی درکار است، چنانچه این دو آیه کریمه در بابِ اینچنین جماعت وارد است بِشِرْهِمْ رَبِّهِمْ بِرَحْمَةٍ مِّنْهُ وَرِضْوَانٍ وَ جَنّتٍ لَّهُمْ فِيهَا نَعِيمٌ مَّقِيمٌ خُلِدِينَ فِيهَا اَبَدًا اِنَّ اللّٰهَ عِنْدَهُ اَجْرٌ عَظِيمٌ (۳) - یعنی مژده میدهد ایشان را پروردگار ایشان برحمتی از خود و مژده میدهد بفرودسِ اعلیٰ و بهشتها که مرایشان راست در آن بهشتها نعمتهای دائمی و رستگاری بی انقطاع از نزدیکِ حق تعالی بدرستیکه مزدیست بزرگ - و نیز آیه کریمه دیگر وَ يَبْشِرُ الْمُؤْمِنِينَ الَّذِينَ يَعْمَلُونَ الصَّالِحَاتِ اَنْ لَهُمْ اَجْرًا حَسَنًا مَّا كُنْتُمْ فِيهَا اَبَدًا (۴) - یعنی مژده بدهید (پیغمبر صلی اللّٰهُ عَلَیْهِ وَ سَلَّمَ) مومنانرا که عمل میکنند نیک که حصول معرفتِ حق سُبْحَانَهُ تَعَالَى باشد و بدرستیکه مرعارفانرا ست مزدی نیکو که فرودسِ اعلیٰ باشد و درنگ کزندگان باشند و همیشه مانندگان اندران فرودسِ اعلیٰ •

• (۲) قرآن مجید، ۱۰ : ۶۲

• (۱) قرآن مجید، ۹ : ۷۲

• (۳) قرآن مجید، ۱۸ : ۳۰، ۲

• (۴) قرآن مجید، ۹ : ۲۱

## ۲۱ — بیان روز و شب

الوهیّتِ ظهور و بطون - بطورِ موحدانِ همد عمر برهما که جبرئیل باشد و فغای برهماند و تمامی روز ظهور که روزِ الوهیّت باشد هژده آنج سالِ دنیا ست که هرآنجی هزار سالِ دنیا باشد بموجبِ این دو آیه کریمه و اِنَّ یَوْمًا عِندَ رَبِّكَ کَأَلْفِ سَنَةٍ مِّمَّا تَعُدُّونَ (۱) - یعنی بدرستیکه روزیست نزد پروردگار تو مانند هزار سال که می شمارند اهل دنیا و آیه کریمه، تَعْرُجُ الْمَلَائِكَةُ وَالرُّوحُ اِلَیْهِ فِی یَوْمٍ کَانَ مَقْدَارُهُ خَمْسِیْنَ اَلْفَ سَنَةٍ (۲) یعنی راجع میشوند بسوی پروردگارِ خود فرشتگان و روح که عبارت از جبرئیل و برهماست در روزیکه مقدار آن روز پنجاه هزار سال و هر روز ازین پنجاه هزار از هزار سال متعارف است که در آیه اول بآن تصریح شده - پس مدّتِ عمرِ جبرئیل و مدّتِ عمرِ روز و عمرِ تمامی عالم که برهماند باشد حساب میکنم هیجده آنج سال دنیا باشد و هر آنجی هزار سال باشد بی کم و زیاد - مطابق حسابِ موحدانِ همد - بدانکه خصومیتِ اعداد هژده نزد ایشان منحصر بر هشت ده است و ازین بالاتر مرتبه شمار قرار نداده اند و قیامت‌های صغری که درین میان گذشته اذد و خواهند گذشت آن قیامت‌ها را کهنده پری میگویند مثلِ طوفانِ آب یا طوفانِ آتش یا طوفانِ باد، و چون این مدّت تمام گردد این روز شام شود و قیامتِ کبری خواهد شد که آن را مها پری گویند بحکم این در آیاتِ کریمه یَوْمَ تُبَدَّلُ الْاَرْضُ غَیْرَ الْاَرْضِ (۳) یعنی روزیکه بدل کرده شود زمین را

(۱) قرآن مجید، ۲۲ : ۴۷ • (۲) قرآن مجید، ۷۰ : ۴ • (۳) قرآن مجید، ۱۴ : ۴۸ •

بغیر زمین و یومَ نَطْوِي السَّمَاءَ كَطَيِّ السَّجَلِ لِكُنُوبِ (۱) یعنی روزی که پیغمبر  
 آسمانرا مانند کاغذ برای کثابت - و بعد از قیامت کبری در شب  
 بطون که در برابر روزِ ظهور است و استهلاكِ جميعِ تعینات در حضرت  
 ذات خواهد شد نیز هر ده سال آنچ دنیا ست - اوستهاتم که عبادت از سکهویت  
 و جبروت است، مدت این سکهویت حضرت ذات است که اوزا  
 فراغ است از ایجاد خلق و اعدام عالم و آیه کریمه سَقَرُوعُ لَكُمْ آيَةُ  
 الْكُفْلٰی (۲) یعنی زود است که فراغ میشویم از شما ای جن و انس اشاره  
 باین سکهویت است، و حضرت ذات در ایامِ ظهورِ عالم در مقامِ نَسوت است  
 و در قیامت‌های صغری در مقامِ ملکوت و بعد از قیامت کبری در مقامِ  
 جبروت •

ای عزیز آنچه درین باب نوشته شده بعد از دقت تمام و تحقیق بسید  
 مطابق کشف خود است و این کشف باین در آیه کریمه مطابق آفتاد و با آنکه  
 تو در هیچ کتابی ندیده‌ای و از هیچکس نشنیده‌ای - اگر برگوش بعضی از نقلات  
 گران آید ما را ازین معنی باکی نیست فَاِنَّ اللَّهَ غَفِيْرٌ عَنِ الْعٰلَمِيْنَ (۳) •

## ۲۲ — بیان بی نهایتی ادوار

نزد محققان اهل هند حق تعالی را نه همین یک شب است و یک  
 روز بلکه این شب که تمام شود باز روز میشود و روز که آخر شود شب می  
 آید اِلَى غَيْرِ الْكٰهِنِيْتِ - و این را آناد پرواه میگویند - خواجه حافظ علیه الرحمة  
 اشاره بهمین بی نهایتی ادوار نموده گفته است •

(۱) قرآن مجید، ۲۱ : ۱۰۴ • (۲) قرآن مجید، ۵۵ : ۳۱ • (۳) قرآن مجید، ۳ : ۹۶ •

ملجرای من و معشوق مرا پایان نیست  
هرچه آغاز ندارد نپزیرد انجام

و هرچه از خصوصیات ظهور ذات و مغفیات در روز و شب پیشین شده بی  
کم و بیش در روز و شب دیگر بعینه عود کند بموجب آیه کریمه کَمَا بَدَأْنَا  
أَوَّلَ خَلْقٍ نُعِيدُهُ (۱) - یعنی چنانکه ظاهر گردانیدیم در اول خلقت موجوداتی  
را که معدوم گشته بود پس بعد از تمام شدن (این) دوره باز عالم ابوالبشر  
آدم عَلَيْهِ السَّلَام بعینه پیدا شود و لایزال چنین باشد و آیه کریمه کَمَا بَدَأْنَا  
تَعْوَدُونَ (۲) نیز دلالت برین معنی میکند یعنی چنانکه اول شما را پیدا کرده  
باز همان طور پیدا کنیم - اگر کسی شبهه کند که خاتمیت پیغمبر ما صَلَّى اللهُ  
عَلَيْهِ وَسَلَّمَ ازین ثابت نمیشود میگویم که در روز دیگر نیز پیغمبر صَلَّى اللهُ عَلَيْهِ  
وَآلِهِ وَسَلَّمَ بعینه موجود خواهد گردید و خاتم پیغمبران آن روز خواهد  
گردید و این حدیث شب معراج نیز دلالت بر همین معنی میکند - میگویند  
که پیغمبر صَلَّى اللهُ عَلَيْهِ وَسَلَّمَ قطری شترانرا دید که لابنقطع میروند و بر هر یکی  
دو صندوق بلر است و در هر صندوق عالمی است مثل همین عالم و در هر عالم  
مثل خود محمدی - از جبرئیل پرسید که این چیست - گفت یا رسول الله  
از رقتیکه آفریده شده ام می بینم که این قطری شتران با صندوق میروند و من  
هم نمیدانم که این چیست - و این اشعار به بی نهایتی ادوار است •

الْحَمْدُ لِلَّهِ وَالْمِنَّةُ لَهُ تَوْفِيقِي انمام رساله مجمع البحرين یافته شد در سنه  
یکهزار و شصت و پنج هجری نبوی که چهل و دویم از سنین عمر این فقیر  
بی اندوه محمد داراشکوه بود - والسلام •

## VARIANTS.

### LIST OF MSS. REFERRED TO :—

1. A. MS. in the Asiatic Society of Bengal (Curzon Collection, III No. 156).
2. H. MS. in the Āṣīfiya Library, Hyderabad, Deccan.
3. K. MS. in the Khudā Bakhsh Khān (Oriental Public) Library, Patna.
4. R. MS. in the Rāmpūr State Library, Rāmpūr, U.P.
5. V. MS. in the Victoria Memorial Hall, Calcutta.

(Page numbers refer to the pages of the printed text.)

### Page

1. K. بنامی for بنام ; 2. A, K add دو before اشد ; R omits بهم ; 3. K adds بینالی before زیبای , R has بی before نظیر ; 7. R has در همه اوست ظاهر و همه ازوست , K omits همه ازوست ; A has بر همه اوست ; in V the first line of the quatrain is given before در همه اوست and the main text runs thus در همه اوست ظاهر , همه اوست ; 8. A, H omit باشد after نه .
2. 3. A has خلق for فرق ; 6. R, K omit آل کرام ; A omits او باد and adds سلمو التسلیما کثیرا کثیرا after مظلم ; V omits اما and adds چنین after بعد ; 7. K, R add بن شامجهان بادشاه after دارا شکوه ; 8. K, R omit دقیق ; 9. H در کسب کند for درک کند ; all copies have مستقلان و قوم after این قوم ; K, R have قدم نماید after قوم ; A has اقدام after قوم ; 11. all the texts have سنجدگی after خدایابی ; V has صحبت یکجا جمع کرده و صحبتها داشته و گفتگوی نموده ; A has داشت و گفتگو نمود ; 14. A, H, V, R have مجمع for مجموعه ; 16. R has سوره قدس سوره ; all texts, except A, omit هو before انصاف ; 17. A, H, K, V omit

## Page

پس ; 21. R has بخواص و عوام ; H, V, A omit چنانچه ; all texts omit نصرالله, except V, which has عبدالله.

۳ 1. K has فرمودند for فرموده ; all texts, except V, have در for پر ; A, R, V have بهنجار ; A adds و می آموزم after ششم ; A adds ازو after. 4. A has همین ناستوی ; 9. R has موجودات for موجود ; 10. R has و آن before برحق ; A, H, K have اجن , R اجل for برحق ; H adds اصل after است ; 11. A has کتاب for کتب ; 13. A has بزبان هندی for بزبان ; A adds و اهل اسلام را before... و گت ; 14. A omits برین بیافریدیم ; A has پرشیده and V مخفی for پنهان ; 15. R has پس شناخته شدم for برای شناخت خود ; H, K, A omit خلقی را after.

۴ 2. V has اجمال , H اجماعیت , K, A عمایت for اعظمت ; 3. R omits حبس for جنبش ; A has و چون آن نفس ..... آتش پیدا شد ; 4. A, H, K, V have مخفیت for نغفیت ; 5. V omits آب ..... ; 7. A, H have ناست بآن ; 8. A, V, H, K have ظاهر for پیدا ; 9. H has شیرک and A شیر for شیری ; 13-14. all MSS., except R, omit the verse سما شد ..... ; 17. V has فرو خواهد برد before و آن را آب for و بعد ازان خاک را آب ; 18. V has باد را روح اعظم for با روح اعظم ; R has خواهد بیوست ; 21. A, V omit the translation of the verse of the *Kur'ān*.

۵ 1. H has بوده and K has شود for بُود ; H, R have می before ماند ; R omits تر after پروردگار ; 2. all texts, except K, omit کریمه ; A, H have فانی for افنای ; 3. K has است after رفته ; H omits است after فانی خواهد شد for فانیت ; 4. H has و ما before آن ; R omits اکل ; 5. A has باشد for است ; R, V omit باشد ; R omits چه ; 6. V has نامند for گویند ; all texts, except V, have زائیده for پیدا ; 7. V omits از for ازان ; 8. A, H, V have از این before کریمه ; 9. V omits و دران خاک پروردیم and V has خواهیم برد for فرو بریم ; A has

## Page

for the same; R adds *و باز بظاک سپردیم شما را*; V omits *از آن خاک*; A has *باز* before *بیرون*; 10. A adds *خمس* after *حواس*; 11. H, V have *عنصر* for *عنصر*; H adds *پنجگانه* after *عنصر*; K omits *عنصر*; V has *حواس پنج اند*; V omits *بزربان*; 12. R has *مندی* for *مندی*; A, H, V omit *بزربان*; 13. A has *را* and K has *آنها را* for *را*; 14. V has *از* for *ازین*; H and R have *از* for *ازین* before *عنصر*; A has *منعلق* before *جنس*; 15. K omits *بآن* and *منسوب*, A has *باشد* after *بآن*; A, R have *چنانچه* before *شامه*; H omits *است* before *بظاک*; R has *چراکه* for *چراکه*; 16. R has *پس* for *و* after *خاک*; all texts, except K, have *مناسب* for *احساس*; all texts have *مناسب* for *منسوب*, except K, which has *مناسبت دارد*; 17. H reads *مناسبت دارد* for *مناسب است*; A has *چنانچه* before *ذایقه ظاهر است*; 18. R has *ادراک* for *درک*, V has *رنگها* for *رنگ*; A omits *است* after *بچشم*; K omits *هر دو* and R has *درو* for *هر دو*; H has *سامعه* for *لامسه*.

1. R omits *باد است* ... *ولامسه را نسبت*; A has *منسوب* for *مناسبت دارد*; *و موحدان هند که صرفیه*; 4. V omits *که سبب* for *سبب*; 5. A, H, K, V have *شغل پس انفاس* for *شغل آواز*; این را; 6. all MSS. have strange variations in enumerating the five internal senses; 8. H, K, V have *چترانند کرن*, while A has *چترانش کرن*; 9. A has *ست پرکرت* for *پرت*; R has *سرت*, V has *سرت*, K, H have *پرکرت*; 11. all texts have *جانب* or *بجانب* for *طرف*; all texts, except V, have *من* for *آن*; 12. V has *عزیمت* for *عزیمت*; H, V, R have *فنج* and A has *فسق* for *فسخ*; 13. R has *هر طرف و هر سو*; 15. V has *کلی احاطه* for *کلی*; 17. all texts, except R, have *کلی احاطه*.

1-2. A omits translation of the *Kur'ānic* verse; 3. A, H have *پس* after, all *اوست*; 4. H has *نباشد* for *باشد*; 6. all texts have *والله*; 7. R has *هر دو* for *ظهور*; 9. H has *اولی* and R has *ازلی* for *ادنی*; 10. A, H have *هلیت محسوس*, V has *هلیات محسوسه* and K has



## Page

K مرتبه منی و تولی و 11. R has حیات محروسه for حیات حسیات محروسه ; A has تو after ازین سخن سخن V ; که من و تو..... می افند omits ; 12. H, K repeat جز این نیست ; 13. A has دور می افند for دور همم ; 14. H has معین and R has نعمین for بشری for آدمی ; 16. R has معنی قلب با مہانت با مہانت ; all texts, except R, omit ; K omits من و از من راز من نیز گویند ; 17. R reads من و از من راز من و از من راز من ; H has اجسام for اجسام ; 18. A, H, R have گیان کرم for گیان گیان اندری .

1. R only has قبل از ظهور اول ..... جبرئیل امین باشد است before این (omit. in trans.); 2. all texts, except V, have گردانیده for است ; 3. all texts have چنانچه for چنانکه ; 4. V omits را قیود و همی را ; R has قیودات for قیود ; 5. R omits خود را..... است ; 6. H omits گلهای ; 7. all texts, except R, omit دوش دار دوش ; K omits پنهان بود ; 8. all texts, except R, omit پیش از ..... پنهان بود ; 11. all texts, except R, omit چه چه and ; H, K, A omit بی before اختیار ; 12. all texts, except R. omit هر آن ; V reads ممی باشد ; 14. all texts, except R. omit درون رفتن و بیرون آمدن دم را ; all texts, except R, have او for سو ; 15. H, V, A have وین ; H has وین and R has وین for بیرون ; A has وینگ , H has وین and R has وین for این دو لفظ را که او باشد هم میگویند و آن لفظ وین را الله ; R adds : . و این دو لفظ ..... و او بی خبر است ; 17-18. H, K, V, A omit میدانند .

2. All texts, except R, have صوفیه دو صفت است ; 5. all texts have چون before صوفیه ; K, R omit صفت after صوفیه ; all texts, except H, have مندرج before دیده ; 6. all texts, except H. have باد و باد ... باسرافیل ; 10. H, R, A omit هندی for موکلان ; 12. K, R omit در زبان ; 13. A reads از آن بینائی و نور ازوست و بینائی ; H reads as : R reads ظاهر شد ظاهر شد ظاهر شد ; 14. V omits فانی شود ; 15. A adds دروست for دروست ; 16. A adds دروست و نفی ; 17. A adds دروست و نفی ; 18. all texts omit دروست ; 19. R omits صفت هم ; 20. all texts omit مخلوق .

## Page

- 10 1. All texts, except R, omit آن را ..... و ازین ; 2. V has ست کن for رجوگن and omits دارد نملق ; 3. V has رچگن for ست کن ; 6. A has جبرآتما for آتما ; 7. H, K, R have معدود for معدود, while A reads معدود ; 8. K adds که بجهت مقید بودن before در مرتبه ; all texts, except K, have بتمین اول متعین گشت ; 9. A, V, H omit با ذات مجمع ; R has جامع الصفات ; all texts omit و ذاتیکه ; 10-11. H reads نفس و موج آب and A, R read نفس و روح V, reads نفس و روح ; all texts read آتما جبر آتما ; A omits ماند ..... و مجموعه ; 13. R has یقین for چنن ; A reads آب صرف بعث (1) بمنزلت حضرت واجب الوجود باشد.
- 11 2. A adds یعنی کپال after ام الدماغ است ; 5. R has ناچار گیر گیر گریز ; 7. all texts omit ملکوت before عالم ; 9. all texts have موافق باشد after غیره ; 11. H omits ارواح عالم ; R adds ارواح عالم ; 12. R reads در آن نفوس آن عالم ارواح ; H omits بیینی while H has نشینی for بیینی ; A has خواد چشم پوشیده بیینی خواد وا کرده ; 14. V omits خبر داده و فرموده ; K, R have بغدادی ..... سره ..... ; K omits سره ..... ;
- 11 1. R has بی for بیع ; H has بنشین ; H has بی رسید ; 2. R has چه باشد و چه خواهد بود ; V has چه میشود and A has که ; A omits فرموده ; H, K have فرمود که ; R, V omit دیدار for دیدن ; A adds را after بیننده ; K reads بییننده در پی دیدار غفلت است ; 3. H omits بغافلر نگذارد ; H, K, A have ساعت for سماعت ; 4. R has ساعت ; 5. A omits اشاره ..... است ; 6. A, V add u after مهر آتش and has یکی ; 7. A, H, V add u after دانش and V has نداشت ; A, H have آشکارا ; 9. H has آشکارا ; 10. A, H read بیرون شوی بر همان ; V reads بیرون شوی ز بر همان ; 11. H,

## Page

- A, V read *خسپ مي خوش* ; 12. A adds *اشارات باين معنی* and *پاها دراز کن خوش مي خسپ* before *وتربا* است .
- 13 1. A has *هوتت* for *لاهور* ; 4. A, V, K add *ناد* and H adds *ناد* after *آواز* ; 5. all texts have *بجهت* for *بوقت* ; A reads *باد را نقرای* ; 6. A, H, K, V add *ناد* after *آواز* ; 8. A, H read *اوست* ; 9. K reads *همه عالم صدای* ; 13. A, H, R omit *اکبر* after *آواز* .
- 14 1. K omits *بی* ; H, K omit *الفاظ* ; 3-4. A, V read *ظاهر شده* , H has *اوون باشد ظاهر شد* and K has *او باشد* , R has *الف واو ميم باشد* ; 6. R reads *ظاهر شد* ; H reads *اسم راست صورتی خاص* ; A reads *اسم راست صورتی خواست* and R reads *اسم راست صورتی خاص* ; 7. R, V omit *ما* .
- 15 2. K has *بصورت* for *الصفات اولیائی در حق ایشان خود* ; 4. V adds *برموده* after *صنّره* است ; 5. K adds *که* after *وزنگ* ; R has *ولیبی* ; 6. R has *دیگر نمی باید* ; all texts, except R, omit *حق سُدَعَانَهُ تَعَالَى* ; 7. H, V have *شخصی* ; 8. R has *رود* for *شود* ; H has *ببند* and V has *ببند* for *بنشیند* ; H, V omit *نه* ; 9. all texts, except R, omit *و حال آنکه* ; 10. all texts, except H, omit *این همه کارها* ; A, R have *این همه کارها* ; K, V have *این همه کارها* and H omits *همه* ; 11. R adds *چشم* before *چراغ* ; R has *در بکدیگر* ; all texts, except R, omit *جَلَّ شَانَهُ* .
- 16 1. A has *فکر* for *فکری* ; R has *فکر است* ; 2. R has *عمل مباداة الثقلین* , H reads *تفکر ساعة خیر من عمل الثقلین* , V reads *و تفکروا ساعة خیر من عمل الثقلین* , K reads *خیر من عمل الثقلین* ; 3. R reads *تفکر ساعة خیر من عمل الثقلین* and A reads *تفکر ساعة خیر من عمل الثقلین* ; 5. R omits *بهنر است* ; 6. all texts, except R, omit *نور* ; all texts, except R, have *خود بخورد* ; 7. all texts have *خواه عالم درو نماید خواه نماید* ; R adds *نور* before *نور* ; K has *نور* for *منور* ; R has *اند* for *کرده* ;

## Page

H reads *بنور تعبیر* for *تفسیر*; K has *تفسیر* for *تفسیر*; 8. A, H have *بنور تعبیر* for *تفسیر*; 12. V omits *همیشه*; 13. all texts add *چراغ* after *بآن* *افروخته*; 14. R has *با آنکه* and H has *تا آنکه* for *با آنکه*; all texts, except R, have *باو* for *بآن* *روغن*; 16. H, K have *نور* for *نور*, while V omits *نور*; 17. H, K, V have *را که* for *شخصی که*; 18. all texts omit *این باشد که*; A has *طایفه*.

- 17 1. A, K, V add *روح است* and *و آن شیشه که* after *روح است*; H has *و آن* and *افروخته شده* after *روح است*; R omits *هم* *روح است* and *افروخته شده* after *روح است*; A reads *منزه* for *ذات که منزه*; 2-3. A, H, K omit *هم* *روح است* and *افروخته شده* after *روح است*; R omits *ذات که منزه* after *روح است*; 3. R adds *صلوة اللہ علیہ وسلم* after *نور وجود*; all texts, except R, omit *حق سبحانه تعالی*; 4. all texts omit *مراد است*; A, R read *از زیت* for *ازین روح*; 5. R has *زیت* for *زیت*; all texts, except R, omit *زیت* after *مبارک است*; R adds *زیت* after *مبارک است*; 6. all texts, except R, omit *و تابان*; 7. A, K add *موحّدان* after *امناد* and H adds *هند موحّدان*; R omits *امناد*; 8. A, K have *زینون* for *یا نور و صماع کتاب نیست*, H has *صورت صماع کتاب نیست*; A reads *صماع و سماع* and V has *صماع و سماع* and *و ساعنی و اکتساب نیست*; R has *صماع کتاب نیست*; 9. all texts, except R, omit *ذاتی*; 10. V has *نورائیت* for *زیت*; all texts add *با* after *زیت*; K has *غایت*; R omits *و باین*; 11. H, K, R have *باینه* and A has *باینه* for *و باین*; V has *با وجود* for *با وجود*; 14. A omits *ظاهر است*; 16. all texts, except H, omit *نور*; all texts, except R, omit *و تابان*; 17. A, H have *افزوده* for *افروخته*; K has *افزوده* for *افروخته*.

- 18 3. A adds *باطن باید دید* after *بچشم سر*; 5. H, K, V add *و بینایان* and V has *و بینایان* after *شبهی*; A omits *اختلاف* and A adds *اختلاف* after *و اختلافی*; K adds *دو* after *هر*; 6. all texts, except K, omit *چه اهل توریث و چه اهل انجیل و چه* in A the order is *چه اهل بید* *مر که انکار رویت*; V omits *نا بینایان* for *ناقصان*; 7. A has *زبور و قرآن* for *زبور و قرآن*; 8. all texts

have در for بر; 9. A, R, K omit هم; R has سنّت و الجماعت ربّانی for هم; R has  
 10. A, H, K, V omit گفته; A, H, V, K have بعثت صرف for بعثت; R  
 reads یعنی اگر میگفتی که بعثت را بتوان دید که دیدن ذات بعثت معال است  
 K omits را; A omits دیدن; K omits این; 11. all texts, except  
 R, add بعثت و صرف و لطیف بی تعیین تا متعین و صرف A; و صرف R;  
 12. R reads ذات بعثت و صرف و لطیف است متعین نگرود V reads نگرود  
 14. all texts, except R, omit زیراکه; R  
 has از کمال قدرت for کمال; V has مجال for هرگاه; R adds چون  
 15. R adds نیز after نمودن خود; R has پس هرکه; A, H have  
 17. A, H, K add پس آن شخص after معروف است; R omits در آنجا  
 18. R adds و بی بهره after معروف; A omits من جمال  
 19. R adds درین مسئله خطای شیهه و بعضی از نا رسیدگان  
 20. R omits و درستی for بهر حال صورتی  
 اند  
 داشت

1. all texts, except R, omit ایشلن جمیع; R has حطای عظیم کرده اند  
 for کمالان و انبیا و اولیا; 2. all texts, except R, have این نهایت خطاست  
 R omits خدا را; A has دیدند; all texts, except R, omit احترام  
 3. R has کلام حق را از همه و از همه جهات شنودند  
 R, omit چنانکه for چنانچه; 5. A, H, K  
 add و خانهای متبرک R omits شر و شر از خدا  
 7. all texts, except R, omit از نا رسیدگان; R omits در معنی و لفظ  
 8. H, K, V  
 read این حدیث که حضرت رسول الله (صلم) در خواب حضرت عایشه  
 A  
 —(جواب is evidently a mistake for خواب) — صدیقه و تقیقه پرسیده بود  
 9. R. has made strange additions and  
 adds وقتی before پرسید و وقتی alterations: چون عایشه خورد سال بود نفهمید و این معنی ندانست لهذا گفت  
 10. A, H, V  
 have نورایت for نوریت; نوریت چگونه می بینم  
 11. R reads غلط آنها for آنانکه  
 12. all texts, except R, omit این لاکن این معط است و بی وقوف اند  
 13. V adds نور و اگر حس نظر بذات بعثت  
 16. R adds جمال before پروردگار  
 و هر یک است

Page

17. all texts, except R, have بر رویت پروردگار جَلَّ شَانُهُ for برای رویت ; unfortunately, a sentence has been omitted in the printed text which runs as follows : چه این دیدن متعلق بلفظ رب شده است که او را در پس این دیدن and R's reading is as follows : تعیین ربوبیت می توان دیدن ; بیرونگی after بذات بعثت 18. R adds لا تعیین است در همه تعیین و تعیینات ; بیرونگی after و لا تعیین است ; R adds بصرها او را 19. all texts add ; و او در یابد صاحب دیده ها را A has ; و او ..... بیرونگیست A, R omit ; پس این آیت هم مانع ادراک بعثت میشود نه مانع رویت R adds .

۲۰ 5. K omits در میان ; 6. R adds چشم و جسم مبارک after ; 7. K adds رویت after و کمال شهود و کمال عرفان and R adds نهایت ; A, H, K have و این رویت را از دنیا مانع نیست و در آخرت R reads ; این رویت ; 10. A reads خدای تعالی را اسمای درکار نیست .

۲۱ 3. H omits اسم ; H has العی and A, R have الحق for الحق ; 4. A adds مرید را سونتر گویند , K has مرشد را سوننت and H, R have در شفا خوانند after مرید را سوننت ; 5. R omits بزبان ایشان ; 6. R adds یعنی حضرت محمد مصطفی صلی الله علیه و آله و سلم و حضرت علی کرم الله and آن باشد نزد ایشان R adds ; مظهرانم after وجهه را صها اوتار نامند ; و از وجود او بنظر آید before مظهرانم ; 7. all texts, except R, omit قدرت before مظهرانم ; R has نوع انسانی ; 8. A, K have نتوان شد , H has نتوان شد and V has 9-10. که بر پیغمبر نازل شود ; all texts, except R, omit for نبوده باشد ; صعب ترین وحی ها بر من H has , صعب ترین وحی بر من آن است A, V have ; 11. R omits ..... چون و اوقات وحی ما آنست and K has وحی آنست ; 12. A has خوربان جنان , K has حوران جنان and R has حسینان ; 13. R omits انچهرا گویند after و بتیان گویند ; K adds خوربان جنیان for دیوان شیاطین اند A reads ; بدن for دشگان .

۲۲ 4. H adds و مشابه دارد که نور منزه هم است و مشابه ; 5. A omits اول , while R has ; و التفریبه after هم توان گفت ; 6. R has وعظ و تالفین کنند and V has هدایت کنند for ; 7. R omits نبرد ; all texts, except V, have

## Page

نبردند ; 8. R has ; 9. all texts, except R, omit ; 10. V has and A, H, K have در for از ; R reads حق شنید ; all texts, except R, omit حق ; H, K, V have اَمّت اکثری and R has اَمّتی اکثر ; 11. A, H, K add خدا after عصیان ; K has متمبّدان and H has مقلدان for بیقیدان ; 12. A has زمانِ زمانی ; A omits آنانکه , while H has آنهائیکه ; R adds after نقلید محض ; 13. all texts except H, have اند فرو رفته اند ; H, K add صورتهای and A adds صورتهای before مرغوب ; 14. R adds نمودند خود را هلاک نمودند after اند ; R reads پیروی بوده است بتو همیشه ; 16. R has جور و فلک ; 18. R reads پیروی بوده است همان با تو هم خواهد بود and V reads خواهد بود ; R adds after the verse ( معلم ) ; 20. A, V have نبوت کامل , while H, K have نبوت محدّدست , while H, K have نبوت کامل نبوت محدّدست ; A adds تفریبه only ; R reads تفریبه و تشبیه , while H, K add تفریبه و تشبیه است after , وَ سَلَّمَ , while H, K add تفریبه و تشبیه و جامع المطلق والمقید ; A has رنگ و رنگ , while R reads رنگ در بیرنگی و بیرنگی در رنگ ; 21. all texts, except K, omit یکی for یکی ; all texts, except K, have یکی .

۲۳ 2. R has تشبیه for تفریبه ; R omits بُود ..... و شنوای ; 3. A reads این مرتبه جامع است و خاتمت , H reads این مرتبه بلند جامعیت و قایمیت ; K reads این مرتبه جمعیت و خاتمیت ; all texts, except R, omit ترین ; 4. all texts, except R, omit بذات ; all texts, except R, omit پس رسول ما ; A, H, K have مشرق و مغرب ; 5. R omits شامل ; 6. H omits تفریبه ; 7. all texts, except R, have چنین ; R adds after کلامه ; 8. R has حق for یعنی در اَمّت محدّدی هم and V adds در اَمّت محدّدی ; 9. H, K add تفریبه اند after ; R, which has apparently been transcribed by a *Shi'a* بهترین افراد نوع انسانی که بخطاب لعنک لعنی ( و ) فرمان انا مدینه : العلم و علی بابها شاه ولایت حضرت علی کرم الله وجهه تا امام مهدی صلوة الله علیه و سلامه , و از آنجمله سرگروه اولیا که بخطاب انی لاجد نفس الرحمن من قبله الیمن ذات مبارک حضرت اویس قرنی رحمة الله علیه و در زمان دیگر .....» .

## Page

10. A omits چنانچه در زمان ; 12. V has ادریس و سنبل و اویس , K has ادریس و مثل یونس and H reads مثل ابواللیث ; 13-18. the proper names have, in all the texts, been hopelessly mutilated ; in R several names have been omitted ; H omits ایشلی ; in V ابوالقاسم گرگانی is omitted.
- ۲۴ 1-2. in R several names have been omitted ; in R حضرت و عطار after شمس تبریز is added ; 4. R, while omitting the names of سید قاسم انوار , جامی and خواجه احرار , adds the names of خواجه نقشبند , سید حسن , میر محمد افضل حق نما , خواجه حافظ شیراز , حافظ قیام الدین ; 6. all texts, except H, omit و باوال لال بیراگی ; 8. A reads بر صورت کثرت ; H reads اول بر همانند تقید و ظهور حضرت واجب الوجود است ; 11. A, H, K, R have گویند for گفته اند ; 14. A omits این را ; A has قرار داده اند و اعتبار نموده ; A reads این را جهت میگویند .
- ۲۵ 1. A, R add سیاره after ستاره ; A reads نام ناصند ; 3. A, K have ستاره های ثوابت , H has ستاره ها ثوابت and R reads after هم میدهد و همین آسمان را حکما فلک ; H has ثوابت ستاره ها و موحدان هند آن را ; 5-6. A, H read H omits حکما را ; R reads بجبهت آنست که ; H, K have منها اکل دانسته داخل ..... سپت پرت and R has سپت دیپ and K has سپت پاتال , A has سپت تال ; 9. A has سپت تال ; 10. R has یک یک ; 15. A reads ربع مسکون میگویند ; 16. R omits هم ... این ; H, K add اهل عند before زمین ; 17. all texts, except K, omit زمین ; H, K omit نه ; R omits مثل بمراتب ; 18. A adds دیپ و پلکه دیپ , میکنند after و کشور دیپ , ساکمل دیپ و ساگر دیپ , دیوکر دیپ .
- ۲۶ 1. A reads نامند می ; 3. all texts have گردانیم ; 4. H omits هفت دربارا که سپت سمندر ; H, K read هفت کوه ازین هفت کوه میدانند ; A reads سپت سمندر ; میگویند محیط هر یکی ازین کوه میدانند



## Page

..... نامهای آن R has ; نامهای این هفت سمندر 5. A reads ; گویند محیط .....  
 for آب شیرین 9. A has ; دریا after که سبت سمندر گویند H adds ; دریاها  
 مفتم سوادجل ..... for هفتم نیک سمندر که آن را نرک گویند A reads ; شیر  
 بودن دریاها بعدد هفتم نزد اهل A reads ; تعداد دریای هفت R has ; زلال  
 یعنی H, K , یعنی اگر بدرستی 11. A has ; اسلام ثابت باین آیه کریمه است  
 یعنی A, K read ; یعنی مقدرات ..... است R omits ; اگر بدرستیکه  
 17. K has ; موحدان 15. A has ; مقدر است خدا در هر زمین و کوهی .....  
 که مقرر است و سیاره اند H reads ; 19. H reads ; محققان

۲۷. 5. A reads که از عمل صورت گرفته باشد 6. A, H, K  
 have بعد after فراع A, H, K add ; خواه از عمل نیک خواه از عمل بد  
 omits و بی توقف H omits ; و بی 8. R omits ; میبرند 12. A, H, K  
 add ناله , K could after زار and A adds and H adds دراز ; فریاد after صحت  
 not be deciphered ; 14. A adds که اینها را از آنجا بر آرد and H, K add  
 شده اند and شدند پس 15. A adds باشند پس and H, K add  
 respectively, after بخت ; A has جاردان بآن باشند A, H omit  
 17. R has for از آنها از دوزخ ; پروردگار تو خواهد H reads , تا هنگامیکه  
 تعبیر این آیت فرموده 19. H has ; بر آوردن ..... از دوزخ بر آورده  
 and R has این حدیث روایت کرده

۲۸. 4. H, R have دارد and A has for آرد 5. H, K read  
 ..... درین معنی ثابت شده and A reads ..... ثابت شده از  
 8. A, H, K omit ; این رستگاری عظیم است H has , و این رستگاری بزرگ است  
 for معلوم 13. A has ; بطور موحدان مند 12. R omits the translation ;  
 A, H, K omit و معنی وقتیکه 14. A, K, R omit ; معلوم for مفهوم A has ; مفهوم  
 17. K has زمینها و هر که در before ; صور در before 15. A, H, K add ;  
 and هم A, H, K omit for بیخبری and A has بیخبری ; و هم  
 19. H has نمودن and R has نمودن for نبودن .

۲۹. 1. A, H, K omit والا کرام ..... بموجب 4. R adds after اعتباری  
 5. H omits ظاهر میشود , while R has نباید 6. R adds  
 7. R reads نیز نشان after اعلی باشد و فردوس اکبر است



## Page

تمامی بدن and H, K add بدن after چیز را هضم میکند  
 after رگهای ; 12. A adds آدم after رگها and R adds آدمی after  
 13. in the texts the Sanskrit terms are so hopelessly mutilated that,  
 in most cases, it was impossible for me to decipher them correct-  
 ly. 15-16. R adds ناد and after آواز ; R omits شدن ..... است ;  
 17. H, K, R only have و آب خوردن (omitted in translation). 18. A  
 has عالم پائین for بالای ; 19-20. R reads ستارهها جواهر خانه  
 . بخشش پیش ..... راست R omits ; مها پیرس است

۳۴

3. R omits کنول سیاه for سیاه and adds نقش و نقش ;  
 R omits دارد ..... دل هم ; A, H, K omit باشند ..... ; و این از  
 7. R adds و بدر after ما ; 8-9. A, H, K omit است مها پیرس ; و شب کمان  
 مها پیرس است ' هوا پیران مها پیرس است ' اعمال که ادهرم  
 ; کوه قاف که سمیر نامند A reads after باشد پشت مها پیرس است -  
 ; کوه سمیر پیرت for ; 10. A omits مها پیرس است ; 11. A, H, K have  
 اندر ; R adds راجه before ; 12. A has  
 و دست چپ اصماک بخشش مها پیرس است ; 13-14. R omits قوت  
 for قدرت ; 16. R adds انگشت after ناخنهای ; 17-19. the texts here are hopelessly  
 confused, and R has entirely re-written this portion ; 20. A, H,  
 K have کف for کف .

۳۵

2. A adds ناد and R adds باد after انامت ; A, H, K omit باریک ;  
 4. R has آواز گران for رزی مبارک ; 5. A has رنج و گامش for رنج ; A  
 has طمع عالم ; 6. H, K add دنیوی after الفت and R has نبوی ; A  
 omits بن ; 7. H, K have خوامش for خورش ; A omits همه ; 8. A  
 omits آب ; A, H, K have حلق for دهن ; R adds و از چهار before  
 ; عنصر آب ; 9. H, K omit است ..... ناطقه ; A, H, K omit  
 که فاحیبت ..... ; R adds ; یعنی عشق ; 10. A, H, K omit  
 and چهار کتاب ; 11. R adds قوت شامه مها پیرس است ; عشق  
 after اشارت بدانست ; 12. R omits نفس زدن مها پیرس  
 after هر دو گوش ... است ; 13. A has عنصر باد for عنصر خاک ; 15. A, H, K omit  
 ذات ; 16-17. R omits بینالی مها پیرس ..... و اصل نور ; A, H, K add عالم



## Page

K have هزار for عدد کرور and omit دنیا 9. A omits پنجاه before روز and also omits هزار; H reads و هر روز.... متعارف است. A omits هزار; K has ازین پنجاه هزار ازین پنجاه هزار سال متعارف است هر روز ازین پنجاه هزار سال هزار سال and R has متعارف است پس after صد سال; 10-11, A, R omit بآن; all texts add after صد سال; A has مدّت ظهور و تمامی عالم را, H has و مدّت روز ظهور تمامی عالم and K has هیجده for هزار; 12. A, H, K have صد کرور for هزار سال; A, H, K read برای خصوصیت عدد هزده برای 14-15. A, H, K omit مراتب امداد نود ایشان منحصر در هزده است قیامت‌های که درین..... قیامت‌ها را H omits شمار; H omits درمیان گذشت و خواهند گذشت آن را قیامت صغری گویند و موحّدان هند آن را قدر K adds این روز را شام شود; 16. A, K have پرلی گویند before روز; 17. all texts have بحکم for و حکم.

۳۹ 2. A, K add پیچیدن and H adds after مانند; A, H, K add برای این آثار بظهور خواهد and R adds کتابت after بظهور خواهد رسید; در حضرت..... شد R omits استهلاك after استعمال; 3. R adds رسید; 5. R omits سکهریت..... و جبروت; 6. A, H, K have ایجاد; 8. R adds کریمه after دلالت میکند; خلق و اظهار مالم و مقام; 9. R adds نوشته شده after جبروت; 11. A has درین باب for در سبیل; 12. R omits است و این; 15. R omits ادوار and adds before روز و نه همین; 16-17. R adds بی نیازی است; R has 18. R adds چون روز تمام میشود شب میگردد R reads چون این شب omits خوانده before چنانچه حضرت; R adds الی غیرالنهایت; 19. A omits اشاره بهمین بی نهایتی و بی نیازی او R reads بی نهایتی ادوار نموده فرموده.

۳۰ 2. All texts have آنچه but in Brook. edition of *Diwān-i-Hāfiẓ* باز اعاده کنیم; 4. A has تعبیه خود کند; 5. A, K, R add تمام شدن دروا عالم چه آدم; 6-7. A has خلقت after ظهور و خلقت همان; 9-10. R adds کامل خود after از قدرت; 9-10. R adds کامل خود پیدا شود

## Page

لهذا خاتمیت پیغمبر ما (صلعم) ازین ثابت نمیشود زیرا که در روز دیگر پیغمبر  
 درمیلن راه 13. R adds *راه* before *قطار*; R adds *شتر* after *یکی*; 14. R adds *بنشانند*  
 و آنها را بنشانند after *یکی*; 15. R adds *با اخی* after *بار است* و صندوق بکشاد و دید که در هر صندوق .....  
 after *پرسید که*; 16. A, K, R omit *با صندوق*; 17. R adds *امرار* after *ای*;  
 18. A has *مهرت النبی صلی* که موسوم بمجمع البحرین گشته *گشته*; 19. R has *سنیہ*; R omits *نبی*; A omits *اللہ علیہ و سلم*  
 بی اندوه 20. R has *دارا شکوه* after *دارا شکوه*.

# INDEX I

## [TRANSLATION]

### Names of Persons.

In the following index, prefixes like *Abū*, *Ibn* and *Umm* are disregarded in the alphabetical arrangement: thus, for example, names like *Abul Ḥasan*, *Ibn-I-Muljam* must be sought under *H* and *M* respectively, not under *A* and *I*. The letter *b.* between two names stands for *Ibn*, "son of . . .," the letter *d.* coming after a person's name relates to his death, and *c.* (*circa*) to the approximate date of his birth or death, as the case may be. A number placed in parenthesis, after the name of a ruler, relates to the beginning and end of his reign; and *n* after the number of a page indicates a footnote.

'Abbaside (Caliph), 132-656 A.H.	Abū 'Alī Fuḍāil b. 'Iyāḍ, d. 187
17 n2	A.H. . . . . 22
'Abdul Kādir al-Jūnī. See Muḥi-	'Alī b. Ḥusain al-Wā'iz al-Kāshif
uddīn Abū Muḥammad 'Abdul	4 n1, 28 n45
Kādir b. Abī Ṣāliḥ Mūsā al-Jūnī.	'Alī b. Mūsā ar-Ridā 17 n3, 24 n18
Abū 'Abdullāh Aḥmad b. Ḥanbal,	'Alī an-Naḳī . . . . . 17 n3
called Imām Ḥanbal, d. 241 A.H.	'Alī b. Abī Ṭālib (Caliph), d. 40 A.H.
24 n15	17 n3, 22, 23 n8, n9, n10, 24 n14.
'Abdullāh Anṣārī, see Abū Isma'īl	'Alī (Zain-ul-'Ābidīn) . . . . . 17 n3
Khwāja 'Abdullāh Anṣārī.	Anṣārī, see Abū Isma'īl 'Abdullāh b.
'Abdullāh b. Maa'ūd, called Ibn	Muḥammad al-Anṣārī al-Harawī.
Maa'ūd, d. 32 A.H. . . . . 32	Ibn al-'Arabī, see Muḥiuddīn Ibn al-
'Abdur Raḥmān . . . . . 23 n10	'Arabī.
'Abdur Raḥmān Jāmi, see Nūrud-	al-'Askarī, see al-Ḥasan al-'Askarī.
dīn 'Abdur Raḥmān Jāmi.	'Attār, see Abū Ṭālib Muḥammad b.
Adam (Prophet) . . . . . 38	Abū Bakr Ibrāhīm.
Adham (Ibrāhīm), see Abū Ishāq	Avicenna, d. 428 A.H. . . . . 26 n31
Ibrāhīm b. Adham b. Maṣ'ūr b.	Bābā Piyāray . . . . . 29 n51
Yazīd b. Jābir.	Ibn al-Baghavī . . . . . 26 n27
Aḥmad al-Ḥazzālī, d. 517 A.H. . . . 22	Bahāuddīn Naḳshband. See Muḥam-
Aḥmad-i-Jām, see Abū Naṣr Aḥ-	mad b. Muḥammad.
mad b. Abul Ḥasan al-Jāmi.	al-Bākir, see Muḥammad al-Bākir.
Aḥrār, see Nāsīruddīn 'Ubaidullāh	Abū Bakr 'Abdullāh, surnamed
Aḥrār.	'Atīq (Caliph), d. 13 A.H.
'Āḥṣa Ṣiddīqa . . . . . 18	17 n3, 18 n1, 22, 23 n5, n10.
Akbar, (982-1014) A.H. . . . . 3 n2	Abū Bakr b. Dulaf b. Jahdar aḥ-
	Shiblī, d. 201 A.H. . . . . 22

- Abū Bakr Muḥammad b. Mūsā al-Wāsiṭī, d. c. 320 A.H. 15, 22
- Abū Bakr Shiblī, see Abū Bakr b. Dulaf b. Jaḥdar see Shiblī.
- Abū Bakr Wāsiṭī, see Abū Bakr Muḥammad b. Mūsā al-Wāsiṭī.
- Baḥīst (Vasiṭha) .. 8
- Bāwā Lal Bairāgi .. 23
- Bāyazīd-i-Bistāmi, see Abū Yazīd Ṭaifūr b. 'Isā b. Ādam b. Surūḡhān.
- Biḥr-i-Ḥāfi, see Abū Naṣr Biḥr b. al-Ḥārith b. 'Abdur Raḥmān Ḥāfi.
- Chishtī, see Muḥammad al-Qhazzālī.
- Colebrooke (Sir Henry Thomas), d. c. 1223 A.H. .. 20 n1
- Dārī Shikūh, d. 1069 A.H. .... 3 n1, n3, 4, 4 n1, 8 n1, 12 n3, 15 n1, 19 n1, 27 n37, 29 n47, n48, n49, n50, n51, n52, 41
- Dā'ūd Iṣṭahānī .. 25 n25
- David .. 38
- Abū Dḥar Qhaffārī .. 19 n1
- Dḥun Nūn, see Abul Fā'id b. Ibrāhīm Dḥun Nūn al-Miṣri.
- Dḥun Nūrain (see also 'Uṭhmān b. 'Affān) .. 23 n6
- Dilrubā, see Muḥammad Dilrubā (Shāh).
- Abul Faḍl b. Shaiḫ Mubārak, surnamed 'AlḤamī, d. 1011 A.H. 3 n3
- Abul Fā'id b. Ibrāhīm Dḥun Nūn al-Miṣri, d. 245 A.H. 22, 25 n24, 26 n26
- Farīduddīn 'Aṭṭār, see Abū Ṭalīb Muḥammad b. Abū Bakr Ibrāhīm.
- Fātima .. 17 n3, 23 n9
- Fīrūz .. 24 n18
- Fīrūzān .. 24 n18
- Fudail b. 'Iyād, see Abū 'Alī Fudail b. 'Iyād.
- al-Qhazzālī, see Aḥmad al-Qhazzālī.
- al-Qhazzālī (Imām), see Abū Ḥāmid Muḥammad al-Qhazzālī.
- al-Gurgānī, see Abul Ḳāsim b. 'Alī b. 'Abdullāh al-Gurgānī.
- Ḥāfi, see Shamsuddīn Muḥammad, Khawāja Ḥāfi.
- Abū Ḥāmid Muḥammad al-Qhazzālī, d. 505 A.H. .. 27 n36
- Ḥanbal, see Abū 'Abdullāh Aḥmad b. Ḥanbal.
- al-Ḥasan, d. 49 A.H. .. 17 n3, 23 n8
- Abul Ḥasan 'Alī Jullābī Hujwīrī, Shaiḫ 26 n25, n26, 27 n36
- al-Ḥasan al-'Askarī .. 17 n3
- Ḥasan al-Baṣrī .. 17 n3
- Abul Ḥasan Sarī as-Saqāṭī, d. 253 A.H. .. 12 n3, 22, 24 n18, .. 25 n23, 26 n26, n27
- Hughes (T. P.) .. 17 n3
- al-Hujwīrī, see Abul Ḥasan 'Alī Jullābī.
- al-Ḥusain, d. 61 A.H. .. 17 n3
- Abul Ḥusain Aḥmad b. Muḥammad an-Nūrī, d. 295 A.H. .. 15 n7, 22, 26 n28
- Ḥusain Beykārā, Sulṭān, (873-911 A.H.) .. 29 n46
- Ibrāhīm b. Adham, see Abū Ishāq Ibrāhīm b. Adham b. Manṣūr b. Yazīd b. Jābir.
- Ibrāhīm Khawwāq, see Abū Ishāq Ibrāhīm b. Aḥmad al-Khawwāq.
- Imām Qhazzālī, see Abū Ḥāmid Muḥammad al-Qhazzālī.
- Imām Ḥanbal, see Abū 'Abdullāh Aḥmad b. Ḥanbal.
- Abū Ishāq Ibrāhīm b. Adham b. Manṣūr b. Yazīd b. Jābir, d. between 160-166 A.H. .. 22
- Abū Ishāq Ibrāhīm b. Aḥmad al-Khawwāq, d. 291 A.H. .. 22
- Abū Ismā'īl 'Abdullāh b. Muḥammad al-Anṣārī al-Harawī, Khawāja, (Shaiḫ-ul-Isām), d. 481 A.D. .. 12, 15 n7, 22



- Ja'da .. .. . 23 n8  
 Ja'far aṣ-Ṣādiq, (Imām), d. 148 A.H. .. .. . 17 n3  
 Jahān Ārā, d. 1092 A.H. 29n 49  
 Jalāluddīn Muḥammad, known as Mawlānā Rūmī, d. 672 A.H. 12, 22  
 Jalāluddīn Rūmī, see Jalāluddīn Muḥammad.  
 Jāmi, see Nūriddīn 'Abdur Raḥmān Jāmi.  
 Abul Jannāb Aḥmad b. 'Umar al-Khiwākī, known as Nejmuddīn Kubrā, d. 618 A.H. .. .. . 22  
 Junaid al-Baḡhdādī, see Abul Kāsim b. Muḥammad b. al-Junaid al-Kharrāz al-Ḳawāriri.  
 al-Kāshifi, see 'Alī b. Ḥusain al-Wā'iḻ al-Kāshifi.  
 Abul Kāsim b. 'Alī b. 'Abdullāh al-Gurgāni, d. 450 A.H. .. .. . 22  
 Abul Kāsim b. Muḥammad b. al-Junaid al-Kharrāz al-Ḳawāriri, d. 297 A.H. 12, 15 n7, 22, 23, 25 n21, n23, n25, 26 n27, n28, n29  
 al-Kāzim, see Mūsā al-Kāzim.  
 al-Kharrāz, see Abū Sa'īd Aḥmad b. 'Isā al-Kharrāz.  
 al-Khawwāq, see Abū Ishāq Ibrāhīm b. Aḥmad al-Khawwāq.  
 Khwāja Ahrār, see Nāqiruddīn 'Ubaidullāh Ahrār.  
 Khwāja Bahāuddīn Nakshband, see Muḥammad b. Muḥammad.  
 Khwāja Ḥāfiḻ, see Shamsuddīn Muḥammad Khwāja Ḥāfiḻ.  
 Khwāja Mu'īnuddīn Chishtī, see Mu'īnuddīn Muḥammad Chishtī.  
 Kubrā, see Abul Jannāb Aḥmad b. 'Umar al-Khiwākī.  
 Umm-i-Kulḥūm .. .. . 23 n6  
 Abū Madyan al-Maghribī, see Abū Madyan Shu'aib b. al-Ḥusain al-Andalūsī.  
 Abū Madyan Shu'aib b. al-Ḥusain al-Andalūsī, d. c. 594 .. .. . 22  
 al-Mahdī, see Muḥammad al-Mahdī.  
 Abū Maḥfūḻ Ma'rūf Karkhī, d. 200 A.H. .. .. . 22, 25 n21  
 Maḥmūd Shābistari, see Sa'duddīn Maḥmūd Shābistari.  
 Abul Majd Majdūd b. Ādam, Sanā'i, Ghaznawī, d. 625 or 635 A.H. 3 n1  
 Mālik b. Anas (Imām) .. .. . 25 n16  
 al-Māsmūn, 'Abbaside Caliph, (198-218 A.H.) .. .. . 17 n2, 24 n15  
 Margoliouth, D. S. (Prof.) 27 n37  
 Ma'rūf Karkhī, see Abū Maḥfūḻ Ma'rūf Karkhī.  
 Ma'ahūk aṭ-Ṭūsī, see Muḥammad Ma'ahūk aṭ-Ṭūsī.  
 Ibn Mas'ūd, see 'Abdullāh b. Mas'ūd.  
 Mīr Muḥammad b. Sā'in Dātā, known as Miya'n Mīr or Miya'n Jiv, d. 1045 A.H. 19 n1, 23, 29 n49  
 Mirzā Muḥammad of Ḳazwin 28 n41  
 Miya'n Bārī, d. 1062 A.H. .. .. . 23  
 Miya'n Jiv, see Mīr Muḥammad b. Sā'in Dātā.  
 Miya'n Mīr, see Mīr Muḥammad b. Sā'in Dātā.  
 Moses (Prophet) .. .. . 21  
 Mu'āwiya, 'Umayyad Caliph, (41-60 A.H.) .. .. . 23 n8, n9  
 Muḥammad (Prophet), d. 11 A.H. 4, 15, 17 n3, 18, 18 n1, 19 n1, 20, 21, 22, 23 n4, n6, n7, n8, n9, n10, n12, 24 n13, n14, 32 n5, 39, 41  
 Muḥammad 'Alī (translator of the Kur'ān) .. .. . 33 n4  
 Muḥammad al-Bāqir (Imām) 17 n3  
 Muḥammad Dērā Shikūh, see Dērā Shikūh.  
 Muḥammad Dīlrubā (Shāh) d. after 1064 A.H. .. .. . 23  
 Muḥammad Ḥusain (author of Anwār-ul-'Arifin) .. .. . 24 n14

- Muhammad Husain *Āzād* (author of *Darbār-i-Akbari*) .. 3 n2
- Muhammad al-Mahdī (Imām) 17 n3
- Muhammad b. Manṣūr at-Tūṣī 26 n26
- Muhammad Ma'ṣhūq at-Tūṣī .. 22
- Muhammad b. Muhammad, called *Khwāja Bahā'uddīn Naqshband*, d. 791 A.H. .. 22
- Abū Muhammad Ruwaim b. Yazīd, d. 303 A.H. .. 22
- Abū Muhammad Sahl b. 'Abdullāh b. Yūnus at-Tustarī, d. 283 A.H. 22
- Muhammad b. Sālim .. 25 n24
- Muhammad b. Sawāra 25 n24
- Muhammad at-Taḳī (Imām) 17 n3
- Muḥfuddīn Ibn al-'Arabī, d. 1240 A.D. .. 22, 27 n38
- Muḥīuddīn Abū Muḥammad 'Abdul Ḳādir b. Abī Ṣāliḥ Mūsā al-Jilī, d. 561 A.H. .. 22
- Mu'īnuddīn *Qhiḥṭī*, see Mu'īnuddīn Muhammad *Qhiḥṭī*.
- Mu'īnuddīn Miskīn .. 28 n43
- Mu'īnuddīn Muhammad *Qhiḥṭī*, d. 633 A.H. .. 22
- Ibn-i-Muljam .. 23 n7
- Mullā *Shāh*, see Mullā *Shāh* Muhammad b. Mullā 'Abd Muhammad.
- Mullā *Shāh* Muhammad b. Mullā 'Abd Muhammad, called *Lisā-nullā*, d. 1072 A.H. 23
- Mūsā al-Kāṣim (Imām) 17 n3
- al-Mu'taṣim, 'Abbaside Caliph, (218-227 A.H.) .. 17 n2
- an-Naḳī, see 'Alī an-Naḳī.
- Naqshband, see Muhammad b. Muhammad.
- Nāṣiruddīn 'Ubaidullāh *Ajḥrār*, *Khwāja*, d. 895 A.H. 4 n1, 22
- Abū Naṣr Aḥmad b. Abul Ḥasan al-Jāmī, d. 536 A.H. .. 22
- Abū Naṣr Bīḥr b. al-Ḥārith b. 'Abdur Raḥmān Ḥāfi, d. 227 A.H. .. 22, 26 n26
- Noah (Prophet) .. 21
- an-Nūri, see Abul Ḥusain Aḥmad b. Muhammad an-Nūri.
- Nūruddīn 'Abdur Raḥmān *Jāmī*, d. 898 A.H. 3 n1, 12 n3, n4, 23, 24 n16, 26 n26, n29, 27 n34, n38
- Prophet, the, see Muhammad.
- ar-Riḍā, see 'Alī b. Mūsā ar-Riḍā.
- Ruḳayya .. 23 n6
- Rūmī*, see Jalāluddīn Muhammad.
- Ruwaim, see Abū Muhammad Ruwaim b. Yazīd.
- Sa'd b. Abī Waḳḳāṣ .. 23 n10
- Sa'duddīn Maḥmūd *Shabistari*, d. 720 A.H. .. 9 n1
- Sa'duddīn b. al-Muwayyad Ḥummu'ī, *Shāikh*, d. 660 A.H. .. 34
- Sahl b. 'Abdullāh at-Tustarī, see Abū Muhammad Sahl b. 'Abdullāh b. Yūnus at-Tustarī.
- Abū Sa'īd Aḥmad b. 'Isā al-Kharrāz, d. 286-287 A.H. .. 22
- Abū Sa'īd Faḍlullāh b. Abul *Khair*, d. 440 A.H. .. 22, 27 n34
- Abū Sa'īd b. Abul *Khair*, see Abū Sa'īd Faḍlullāh b. Abul *Khair*.
- Abū Sa'īd *Kharrāz*, see Abū Sa'īd Aḥmad b. 'Isā al-*Kharrāz*.
- Abū Sa'īd, Sultān (854-873 A.H.) .. 29 n46
- Sa'īd b. Zaid .. 23 n10
- Sand'i, see Abul Majd Majdūd b. Ādam *Qhaznawī*.
- Sarī as-Saḳāṭī, see Abul Ḥasan Sarī as-Saḳāṭī.
- Sayyid-uf-Ṭā'ifa*, see Abul Ḳāsim b. Muhammad b. al-Junaid al-*Kharrāz* al-*Kawāfirī*.
- ash-Shāfi'ī (Imām) 12 n3, 24 n15, 25 n23
- Shāhjahān*, the Emperor, (1037-1068, d. 1076 A.H.) .. 29 n47
- Shāh* Mir, see Mir Muhammad b. Sa'īn *Dātā*.

- Shāh Muḥammad Dilrubā**, see Muḥammad Dilrubā.  
**Shaiḫ Aḥmad al-Qhazzālī**, see Aḥmad al-Qhazzālī.  
**Shaiḫ Aḥmad-i-Jām**, see Abū Naṣr Aḥmad b. Abul Ḥasan al-Jāmī.  
**Shaiḫ Farīduddīn 'Aṭṭār**, see Abū Ṭālib Muḥammad b. Abū Bakr Ibrāhīm.  
**Shaiḫ Muḥiuddīn 'Abdul Kādir Jilānī**, see Muḥiuddīn Abū Muḥammad 'Abdul Kādir b. Abī Ḥalīḥ Mūsā al-Jilī.  
**Shaiḫ Muḥiuddīn Ibn al-'Arabi**, see Muḥiuddīn Ibn al-'Arabi.  
**Shaiḫ Najmuddīn Kubrā**, see Abul Jannāb Aḥmad b. 'Umar al-Khiwāḳī.  
**Shaiḫ Sa'duddīn Ḥummu'ī**, see Sa'duddīn b. al-Muwayyad Ḥummu'ī.  
**Shaiḫ Ṭayyib Sirhindī**, see Ṭayyib Sirhindī, **Shaiḫ**.  
**Shaiḫ-ul-Islām**, see Abū Isma'īl 'Abdullāh b. Muḥammad al-Anṣārī al-Ḥarawī.  
**Shaiḫ-ul-Islām Khwāja 'Abdullāh Anṣārī**, see Abū Isma'īl Khwāja 'Abdullāh Anṣārī.  
**Ibn-i-Shaḳīḳ** .. 19 n1  
**Shams-i-Tabriz**, d. 645 A.H. 28 n42  
**Shamsuddīn Khwāja Muḥammad Ḥāṣṭī**, d. 791 A.H. .. 41  
**agh-Shibll**, see Abū Bakr b. Dulaf b. Jaḥdar agh-Shibll.  
**Sultān Ḥusain Bayḳarā**, see Ḥusain Bayḳarā.  
**Sultān Abū Sa'īd**, see Abū Sa'īd Sultān.  
**at-Taḳī**, see Muḥammad at-Taḳī.
- Ṭalḥa b. az-Zubair** .. 23 n10  
**Abū Ṭālib Muḥammad b. Abū Bakr Ibrāhīm**, d. c. 627 A.H. .. 22  
**Ṭā'ūs-ul-'Ulamā**, see Abul Kāsim b. Muḥammad b. al-Junaid al-Kharrāz al-Kawāriri .. 25 n23  
**Ṭayyib Sirhindī, Shaiḫ**, d. after 1064 A.H. .. 23  
**Abū Ṭhawr** .. 25 n28  
**at-Tustarī**, see Abū Muḥammad Saḥl b. 'Abdullāh b. Yūnus at-Tustarī.  
**'Abū 'ubaida b. al-Jarrāḥ** 23 n10  
**'Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb (Caliph)**, d. 23 A.H. 17 n3, 22, 23 n6, n10, 24 n14  
**Ustād Abū Bakr**, see Abū Bakr Muḥammad b. Mūsā al-Wāsiṭī.  
**Ustād Abul Kāsim Junaidī**, see Abul Kāsim b. Muḥammad b. al-Junaid al-Kharrāz al-Kawāriri.  
**'Uthmān b. 'Affān (Caliph)**, d. 35 A.H. (see also *Dhūn Nūrāin*) .. 17 n3, 22, 23 n10  
**Uwais-i-Karānī**, d. between 32-39 A.H. .. 22  
**Vaṣiṭha**, see **Baḥiṭ**.  
**Wāṣil b. 'Aṭṣ** .. 17 n2  
**al-Wāsiṭī**, see Abū Bakr Muḥammad b. Mūsā al-Wāsiṭī.  
**al-Waṭḥīḳ**, 'Abbaside Caliph, (227-232 A.H.) .. 17 n2  
**Yazīd b. Mu'āwīya**, 'Umayyad Caliph, (60-64 A.H.) 23 n9  
**Abū Yazīd Ṭaifūr b. 'Isā b. Ādam b. Surūḡhān**, Bāyazīd al-Biṭānī, d. 261 or 264 .. 22  
**Zain-ul-'Ābidīn**, see 'Alī (Zain-ul-'Ābidīn).  
**Zhanda pīl**, see Abū Naṣr Aḥmad b. Abul Ḥasan al-Jāmī.

## INDEX II

[TRANSLATION]

### Technical Terms, Important Words, Sects, Şūfī Orders, etc.

In the following Index, Sanskrit words have been arranged as they are given in the Text, and not as they are written in Sanskrit; but an attempt has been made to transliterate them, wherever possible. Such proper names as *Jibra'il* or *Malik* etc. have, for good reasons, been included in this list.

<p><i>Abul-Arwāh</i> .. 9, 10 11, 16</p> <p><i>Adham (Adhama)</i> .. .. 8</p> <p><i>Adiwi</i> .. .. 20 n1</p> <p><i>Adwār</i> .. .. 40</p> <p><i>Ahankār (Ahaṅkāra)</i> .. .. 7, 8</p> <p><i>Ahankār Rājas (Ahaṅkāra Rājasa)</i> 8</p> <p><i>Ahankār Sāttag (Ahaṅkāra Sāttvika)</i> 8</p> <p><i>Ahankār Tāmas (Ahaṅkāra Tāmasa)</i> 8</p> <p><i>Ahat (Āhata)</i> .. .. 14</p> <p><i>Ajpā (Ajapā)</i> .. .. 9</p> <p><i>Akār (Ākāra)</i> .. .. 14</p> <p><i>Akṣa (Ākṣa)</i> .. .. 5</p> <p><i>Akṣa Bāni (Ākṣāvāṇi)</i> .. 20</p> <p><i>'Aḥi-i-Kul</i> .. .. 8</p> <p><i>'Ālam-i-Kabir</i> .. .. 34, 35, 38</p> <p><i>'Ālam-i-Malakū</i> .. .. 12</p> <p><i>'Ālam-i-Miḥāḥ</i> .. .. 11</p> <p><i>'Ālam-i-Nāsūt</i> .. .. 12</p> <p><i>'Ālam-i-Şaghir</i> .. .. 34</p> <p><i>'Ālim</i> .. .. 19</p> <p><i>Allāh</i> .. .. 9, 19</p> <p><i>Amcharā (Apcaras)</i> .. .. 20, 36</p> <p><i>Anād parwāh (Anādi pravāha)</i> .. 41</p> <p><i>Anāhat (Anāhata)</i> .. .. 13, 37</p> <p><i>Anant (Ananta)</i> .. .. 19</p> <p><i>'Anāṣir</i> .. .. 5</p> <p><i>Anj</i> .. .. 39, 40</p> <p><i>Anklā (?)</i> .. .. 36</p> <p><i>Anṣār (an-Nabi)</i> .. .. 22</p> <p><i>Antah Karan (Antahkaraṇa)</i> .. 7</p>	<p><i>Apān (Apāna)</i> .. .. 11</p> <p><i>'Arif</i> .. .. 21, 33, 38, 39</p> <p><i>'Arāh</i> .. .. 32</p> <p><i>'Arāh-i-Akbar</i> .. .. 5</p> <p><i>Aṣan (Aṣaṅga ?)</i> .. .. 19</p> <p><i>'Aḥara-i-Mubashshara</i> .. 22</p> <p><i>Aḥḥāḥ</i> .. .. 9</p> <p><i>Aḥni Kumār (Āvinikumāra)</i> .. 37</p> <p><i>Aṣmā-i-Allāh Ta'ālā</i> .. .. 19</p> <p><i>Āmānāh</i> .. .. 30</p> <p><i>Ātal (Ātala)</i> .. .. 30, 35</p> <p><i>Ātmā (Ātman)</i> .. .. 10, 11, 32</p> <p><i>Avāsan (Avasāna)</i> .. .. 13</p> <p><i>Avasthāt (Avasthātman)</i> .. 5, 11, 40</p> <p><i>'Awālim-i-Arba'a</i> .. .. 11</p> <p><i>Awāz</i> .. .. 13</p> <p><i>Awāz-i-Muḥāḥ</i> .. .. 13</p> <p><i>Awiddiya (Avidyā)</i> .. .. 8</p> <p><i>Awāḥ (Awāḥra)</i> .. .. 20</p> <p><i>Bād</i> .. .. 11</p> <p><i>Badvānal (Bāḍavānala)</i> .. .. 35</p> <p><i>Bā'ī (Vāyu)</i> .. .. 5</p> <p><i>Baikunth (Vaiḥkuntḥa)</i> .. .. 33</p> <p><i>Baḥā</i> .. .. 26 n26</p> <p><i>Baran (Garuṇa)</i> .. .. 37</p> <p><i>Barhmā (Brahmā)</i> .. .. 10, 36, 39</p> <p><i>Barhmānd (Brahmāṇḍa)</i> 30, 32, 33, 34,</p> <p>.. .. 35, 38, 39</p> <p><i>Bartamān (Vartamāna)</i> .. .. 39</p>
---	---

<i>Borzakh</i> .. .. .	.. 32	<i>Gagan (Gagana)</i> .. .. .	.. 30
<i>Baqir</i> .. .. .	.. 19	<i>Gahrān (Ghrāna)</i> .. .. .	.. 6
<i>Bāqira</i> .. .. .	.. 6, 7	<i>Gandh (Gandha)</i> .. .. .	.. 6
<i>Batal (Vitala)</i> .. .. .	.. 35	<i>Gandharv Divatā (Gandharva Devatā)</i>	36
<i>Bhuluk (Bhūloka)</i> .. .. .	35, 36	<i>Gandhatanmātar (Gandhatanmātra)</i>	37
<i>Bhūghat (Bhavigyat)</i> .. .. .	.. 39	<i>Gangā</i> .. .. .	.. 36
<i>Bhūt (Bhūta)</i> .. .. .	.. 39	<i>Gayān-i-Indri (Jānendriya)</i> .. .. .	.. 8
<i>Bhūt Akās (Bhūākāśa)</i> .. .. .	5, 38	<i>Gayān Surūp (Jānasevarūpa)</i> .. .. .	.. 8
<i>Bīdmukh (Veda-mukha)</i> .. .. .	.. 14	<i>Ghirat Samundar (Ghrita Samudra)</i>	31
<i>Bihighat</i> .. .. .	.. 32	<i>Hāfta</i> .. .. .	.. 7
<i>Biklā (?)</i> .. .. .	.. 36	<i>Haft Iklim</i> .. .. .	.. 31
<i>Birahapat (Brahapati)</i> .. .. .	.. 30	<i>al-Hak</i> .. .. .	.. 19
<i>Bīghun (Viṅna)</i> .. .. .	10, 36	<i>Hawā</i> .. .. .	.. 6
<i>Bisāmīya (Order)</i> .. .. .	25 n22	<i>al-Hayy-ul-Kayyūm</i> .. .. .	14 n3
<i>Bital (Vitala)</i> .. .. .	.. 30	<i>Hemakūt (Hemakuṭa)</i> .. .. .	.. 31
<i>Brahm</i> .. .. .	20 n1	<i>Himavan (Himavat)</i> .. .. .	.. 31
<i>Brahman</i> .. .. .	20 n1	<i>Hiran Garbha (Hiraṇyagarbha)</i>	.. 5
<i>Budh (Buddhi)</i> .. .. .	.. 7	<i>Hū</i> .. .. .	9, 20
<i>Budh (Budha)</i> .. .. .	.. 30	<i>Hū Allāh</i> .. .. .	.. 9
<i>Chach (Cakrah)</i> .. .. .	.. 6	<i>Hur</i> .. .. .	.. 36
<i>Chach (Yaksa)</i> .. .. .	.. 36	<i>Imām</i> .. .. .	17 n3
<i>Chandrāmās (Candromas)</i> .. .. .	.. 30	<i>Imān</i> .. .. .	.. 3
<i>Chid Akās (Cidākāśa)</i> .. .. .	5, 38	<i>Indar (Indra)</i> .. .. .	.. 36
<i>Chīghatī (Order)</i> .. .. .	28 n43	<i>'Ighat</i> .. .. .	.. 5
<i>Chit (Citi)</i> .. .. .	7, 19	<i>Im-i-A'zam</i> .. .. .	.. 14
<i>Chitan (Ostana)</i> .. .. .	11, 19	<i>Ierāfil</i> .. .. .	.. 10
<i>Dadh Samundar (Dadhi-Samudra)</i>	31	<i>Ighnā 'Azhariya (Seot)</i> .. .. .	17 n3
<i>Dah Digā (Data Digah)</i> .. .. .	.. 30	<i>Jabarūt</i> .. .. .	11, 12, 13, 40
<i>Ḍamma</i> .. .. .	.. 14	<i>Jāgart (Jāgrat)</i> .. .. .	.. 11, 12
<i>Ḍhā'īka</i> .. .. .	.. 6, 7	<i>Jahannam</i> .. .. .	.. 32
<i>Ḍhāt-i-Bahāt</i> .. .. .	11, 16	<i>Jal (Jala)</i> .. .. .	.. 5
<i>Dhun (Dhyāna)</i> .. .. .	.. 7	<i>Jalāl</i> .. .. .	9, 16
<i>Divatā (Devatā)</i> .. .. .	.. 20	<i>Jam (Yama)</i> .. .. .	.. 34
<i>Divā</i> .. .. .	.. 6	<i>Jamāl</i> .. .. .	9, 10, 14
<i>Draghāt (Draṣṭ)</i> .. .. .	.. 19	<i>Jāmi'</i> .. .. .	.. 22
<i>Dūzakā</i> .. .. .	.. 32	<i>Jamnā</i> .. .. .	.. 36
<i>Falak-i-Thawābī</i> .. .. .	.. 30	<i>Jamunān (?)</i> .. .. .	.. 36
<i>Fanā</i> .. .. .	25 n22, 26 n28	<i>Jan luk (Janaloka)</i> .. .. .	37, 38
<i>Fatā</i> .. .. .	.. 14	<i>Jannat</i> .. .. .	32, 39
<i>Firdaws-i-A'āl</i> .. .. .	33, 39	<i>Jnad</i> .. .. .	.. 11
<i>Firighat</i> .. .. .	.. 20	<i>Jibra'il (Gabriel)</i> .. .. .	10, 39, 41

<i>Jihāt</i> .. .. .	30	<i>Mangal (Mangala)</i> .. .. .	30
<i>Jin</i> .. .. .	20, 40	<i>Manukh (Manusya)</i> .. .. .	20
<i>Jiv Ātmān (Jivātman)</i> .. .. .	5, 8	<i>Ma'rifat</i> .. .. .	39
<i>Jīvan Mukṭ (Jīvanmukṭi)</i>	34, 38	<i>Māyā</i> .. .. .	5, 8, 8 n1 37
<i>Junaidī (Order)</i> .. .. .	25 n23	<i>Maḥzar-i-Tāḥ</i> .. .. .	20
<i>Jun Surūp (Jyotiḥ Svarūpa)</i>	.. 15	<i>Mikā'il</i> .. .. .	10
<i>Ḳādir</i> .. .. .	19	<i>Mi'rāj</i> .. .. .	41
<i>Ḳādirī (Order)</i> .. .. .	27 n37, 29 n49	<i>Mitr (Mitra)</i> .. .. .	20 n1, 37
<i>Kailāḥ (Kailāsa)</i> .. .. .	31	<i>Muḥaddithīn</i> .. .. .	24 n13
<i>Kāl (Kāla)</i> .. .. .	35	<i>Muḥājirin</i> .. .. .	22
<i>Kalap birach (Kālpa vrikṣa)</i>	.. 37	<i>Muḥayyad</i> .. .. .	21
<i>Kaḥra</i> .. .. .	14	<i>Mukṭ (Mukṭi)</i> .. .. .	32, 33, 38 39
<i>Khandh parī (Khaṇḍa pralaya)</i>	.. 40	<i>Munawwar</i> .. .. .	15
<i>Ḳharrāzī (Order)</i> .. .. .	26 n26	<i>Muḥṭarak</i> .. .. .	7
<i>Ḳhīr Samundar (Keira Samudra)</i>	31	<i>Mutaḥakkira</i> .. .. .	7
<i>Ḳīmat-i-Zamīn</i> .. .. .	31	<i>Mutakhayyila</i> .. .. .	7
<i>Ḳiyāmat</i> .. .. .	33	<i>Mu'tazila (Sect)</i> .. .. .	17
<i>Ḳiyāmat-i-Ṣuḡhrā</i> .. .. .	36	<i>Muṭlaḥ</i> .. .. .	21
<i>Kubair (Kubera)</i> .. .. .	37	<i>Nād (Nāda)</i> .. .. .	13
<i>Kuḥr</i> .. .. .	3	<i>Nakadh (Niḡadhā ?)</i> .. .. .	31
<i>Kun</i> .. .. .	13	<i>Nakḥbandī (Order)</i> .. .. .	4 n1, 28 n44
<i>Kursī</i> .. .. .	30, 32	<i>Narak</i> .. .. .	32
<i>Lachmi (Lakṣmī)</i> .. .. .	10, 38	<i>Nār-i-Nāsūt</i> .. .. .	16
<i>Lāḥūt</i> .. .. .	11, 13	<i>Nāsūt</i> .. .. .	11, 12, 13, 16, 40
<i>Lāḥisa</i> .. .. .	6, 7	<i>Nichattar (Nakṣatra)</i> .. .. .	30
<i>Lavan Samundar (Lavaṇa Samudra)</i>	31	<i>Niranjān (Niraṇjana)</i> .. .. .	19
<i>Luk (Loka)</i> .. .. .	38	<i>Nirankār (Nirāḳāra)</i> .. .. .	19
<i>Luk pal (Lokapala)</i> .. .. .	36, 37	<i>Nubunwat</i> .. .. .	20
<i>Madhim (Madhyama')</i> .. .. .	3	<i>Nūr</i> .. .. .	14, 15, 37
<i>Mahā Akāḥ (Mahāḳāḥa)</i> 6, 7, 14, 30, 34		<i>Nūrī (Order)</i> .. .. .	26 n27
<i>Mahāparī (Mahāpralaya)</i> 6, 33, 38, 40		<i>Om (Um)</i> .. .. .	14, 20
<i>Mahāpurāḥ (Mahāpurusa)</i> 35, 36, 37, 38		<i>Pakalp (Vikalpa)</i> .. .. .	7
<i>Mahar luk (Mahar loka)</i> .. .. .	37	<i>Pānch Bhūt (Pañca bhūta)</i> .. .. .	5
<i>Mahā Sudh (Mahā Suddha)</i> .. .. .	20	<i>Panj Indrī (Pañca indriyāni)</i>	.. 6
<i>Mahātāl (Mahātāla)</i> .. .. .	31, 35	<i>Parakart (Prakṛṭi)</i> .. .. .	8, 36
<i>Mahātūt (Mahātūtva)</i> .. .. .	8	<i>Param Ātmā (Paramātma)</i>	.. 8, 8 n1, 9, 10, 11
<i>Mahātūh (Maheṣvaru)</i> .. .. .	10, 36	<i>Parān (Prāṇa)</i> .. .. .	11
<i>Malakūt</i> .. .. .	11, 12, 13, 40	<i>Pārbatī (Pārvatī)</i> .. .. .	10
<i>Mālikī (Sect)</i> .. .. .	26 n29	<i>Pārī</i> .. .. .	20
<i>Man (Manṣa)</i> .. .. .	7, 8, 36	<i>Parjānat Divā (Parjanya Devatā)</i>	35
<i>Man Akāḥ (Maniḳkāḥa)</i> .. .. .	5, 32	<i>Parjātar (Pārjyātra)</i> .. .. .	31

<i>Pātāl (Pātāla)</i> .. ..	35	<i>Sarag luk (Svarga-loka)</i> ..	36, 37
<i>Pirthī (Pṛthivī)</i> .. ..	5	<i>Sarasī (Sarasvatī)</i> 10, 13, 14, 36, 37	
<i>Rāchas (Rakṣas)</i> .. ..	20	<i>Sarasī Bhuluk (Sarasvatī Bhūloka)</i> 36	
<i>ar-Raḥīm</i> .. ..	14	<i>Sarbadā Mukṭ (Sarbadā mukṭi)</i> ..	38
<i>ar-Raḥmān</i> .. ..	5, 14 n3	<i>Sarīr (Sarīra)</i> .. ..	11
<i>Raj (Rajas)</i> .. ..	10	<i>Saruā (Śrotā)</i> .. ..	19
<i>Rājas (Rājasa)</i> .. ..	8	<i>Sarutar (Śrotra)</i> .. ..	6
<i>Rajūḡun (Rajogūṇa)</i> .. ..	10, 36	<i>Sat (Satva)</i> .. ..	10, 19
<i>Ras (Rasa)</i> .. ..	6	<i>Sātag (Sattva)</i> .. ..	8
<i>Rasātāl (Rasātala)</i> .. ..	31, 35	<i>Sat luk (Satya toka)</i> .. ..	38
<i>Rasānū (Rasanā)</i> .. ..	6	<i>Sat Parkarat (Satprakṛti)</i> .. ..	7
<i>Riḡwān-i-Akbar</i> .. ..	33	<i>Satūḡun (Satragūṇa)</i> .. ..	10, 36
<i>Rikhi (Ri)</i> .. ..	20	<i>Savaparakas (Svaprakāśa)</i> .. ..	15
<i>Rūḡ</i> .. ..	10, 11, 16	<i>Savāḡ jal (Svāḡujala)</i> .. ..	31
<i>Rūḡ-i-A'zam</i> .. ..	5, 6, 11, 15	<i>Shab</i> .. ..	39
<i>Rūp (Rūpa)</i> .. ..	6	<i>Shahī-i-Pās-i-Anfās</i> .. ..	7, 13 n4
<i>Rūyat</i> .. ..	16, 17, 18, 19, 19 n1	<i>Shajar-i-Mudārak</i> .. ..	15
<i>Rūyat-i-Tām</i> .. ..	18	<i>Shakt</i> .. ..	10
<i>Rūz</i> .. ..	39	<i>Shāmma</i> .. ..	6, 7
<i>Sabd (Sabda)</i> .. ..	6, 14	<i>Shar'</i> .. ..	5
<i>Sachātkār (Sākṣātkāra)</i> .. ..	16	<i>Shaḡhiyāt</i> .. ..	3 n3
<i>Sah (Sah)</i> .. ..	20	<i>Shi'a (Sect)</i> .. ..	17, 23 n9
<i>Saḡī (Order)</i> .. ..	25 n24	<i>Shifāt-i-Allāh Ta'ālā</i> .. ..	9
<i>Sair</i> .. ..	38	<i>Sitta-i-Bāḡiya</i> .. ..	22
<i>Sakhmanā (?)</i> .. ..	36	<i>Spara (Sparā)</i> .. ..	6
<i>Sakhūpat (Susupti)</i> .. ..	12, 40	<i>Sucham Sarīr (Sūkṣma Sarīra)</i> 32, 34	
<i>Samān (Samāna)</i> .. ..	11	<i>Sudh (Suddha)</i> .. ..	11
<i>Samarth (Samartha)</i> .. ..	19	<i>Sukr (Sukra)</i> .. ..	30
<i>Sami'</i> .. ..	19	<i>Sulḡān-ul-Aḡḡkār</i> .. ..	13, 37
<i>Sāmi'a</i> .. ..	6, 7	<i>Sulūk</i> .. ..	21
<i>Samūpat (Sānumat ?)</i> .. ..	31	<i>Sumīr Parat (Sumeruparcala)</i> 35, 34	
<i>Sanīḡhar (Sanaisāra)</i> .. ..	30	<i>Sumirū (Sumeru)</i> .. ..	31, 34
<i>Sankalp (Samkalpa)</i> .. ..	7, 8	<i>Sunni (Sect)</i> .. ..	16, 17, 24 n11
<i>Sankalp Man (Samkalpa Manas)</i> ..	8	<i>Surā Samundar (Surā Samudra)</i> ..	31
<i>Sapan (Svapna)</i> .. ..	11, 12	<i>Sūraj (Sūrya)</i> .. ..	34
<i>Sapanparakās (Svapna prakāśa)</i> ..	15	<i>Sutāl (Sutala)</i> .. ..	31, 34
<i>Sapatāip (Saptadvīpa)</i> .. ..	31	<i>Tābi'in</i> .. ..	2
<i>Sapat Kulāḡhāl (Sapta Kulācala)</i> ..	31	<i>Tāifūriya (Order)</i> .. ..	25 n2
<i>Sapat Samundar (Sapta Samudra)</i> 31		<i>Tajnis-i-ḡhaḡḡi</i> .. ..	19 n
<i>Sapat Tāl (Saptatāla)</i> .. ..	30	<i>Tālātāl (Tālātala)</i> .. ..	31, 3
<i>Sarab Mukṭ (Sarvamukṭi)</i> .. ..	38	<i>Tam (Tamas)</i> .. ..	1
<i>Sarag (Svarga)</i> .. ..	32	<i>Tāmas (Tāmasa)</i> .. ..	..
		<i>Tamūḡun (Tamogūṇa)</i> .. ..	10, 3

<i>Tansih</i> .. ..	21, 22	<i>Ū Manam</i> .. ..	9
<i>Tansihī</i> .. ..	21, 22	<i>Unchch ras Samundar (Iheu-rasa</i>	
<i>Taplok (Tapoloka)</i> .. ..	37	<i>Samudra)</i> .. ..	31
<i>Tariḥat</i> .. ..	21	<i>'Unḥur</i> .. ..	5
<i>Tasaawuf</i> .. ..	4, 12	<i>'Unḥur-i-A'zam</i> .. ..	5, 7, 34
<i>Taḥḥbiḥ</i> .. ..	21, 22	<i>Varma</i> .. ..	20 n1
<i>Taḥḥbiḥi</i> .. ..	21, 22	<i>Vayān (Vyāna)</i> .. ..	11
<i>Tavasta (Tvaṣṭa)</i> .. ..	37	<i>Vayās (Vyāsa)</i> .. ..	35
<i>Tawḥid</i> .. ..	15 n7, 38	<i>Waḥi</i> .. ..	20
<i>Tej (Tejas)</i> .. ..	5	<i>Wāḥima</i> .. ..	7
<i>Tirdiwi (Tridevi)</i> .. ..	10	<i>Waktā (Vyakta)</i> .. ..	19
<i>Tirgun (Triguna)</i> .. ..	10, 19	<i>Wāḥyat</i> .. ..	20
<i>Tirmūrat (Trimūrāṭ)</i> .. ..	10	<i>Wukūr (Ukūra)</i> .. ..	14
<i>Tūbā</i> .. ..	37	<i>Ẓāḥirite (School)</i> .. ..	26 n25
<i>Turyā (Tūriya)</i> .. ..	12, 13	<i>Zamīn</i> .. ..	30
<i>Tvak</i> .. ..	6		
<i>Udān (Udāna)</i> .. ..	11		
<i>Um (Om)</i> .. ..	14, 20		



## INDEX III

### [TRANSLATION]

#### Books mentioned in the Text and the Notes.

<p><i>Akhlāk-i-Jalāli</i> .. 26 n31</p> <p><i>Anwār-ul-‘Arifin</i> .. 24 n14</p> <p><i>Arba‘in</i> .. 29 n46</p> <p><i>Aghī‘at-ul-Lama‘ūt</i> .. 29 n46</p> <p><i>Asiatic Researches</i> .. 20 n1</p> <p><i>Book of David (The)</i> .. 16</p> <p><i>Catalogue of Persian Mss. in the Library of the Asiatic Society of Bengal (W. Ivanow)</i> .. 27 n32, 34 n3</p> <p><i>Catalogue of Persian Mss. in the British Museum (C. Rieu)</i> 28 n44</p> <p><i>Catalogue of Persian Mss. in the Oriental Public Library, Bankipore (Khān Bahādūr ‘Abdul Muqtādir)</i> 27 n33, 29 n46</p> <p><i>Catalogue Raisonné of Arabic Mss. in the Būhār Library (Shams-ul-‘Ulamā Dr. M. Hidāyat Husain)</i> 27 n37</p> <p><i>Cycl. of India</i> .. 20 n1</p> <p><i>Darbār-i-Akbari</i> .. 3 n2</p> <p><i>Dictionary of Islam (Hughes’)</i> 17 n3</p> <p><i>Diwān (of Ahmad al-Jāmī)</i> 27 n33</p> <p><i>Diwān (of Ibn al-‘Arabi)</i> 28 n39</p> <p><i>Diwān (of Jalāluddīn Rūmī)</i> 28 n42</p> <p><i>Diwān (of Jāmī)</i> .. 29 n46</p> <p><i>Diwān (ascribed to Mu‘inuddīn Chishtī)</i> .. 28 n43</p> <p><i>Diwān (of Mullā Shāh)</i> .. 29 n49</p> <p><i>Encyclopaedia of Islam</i> .. 18 n1, 24 n12, 27 n17, n38</p> <p><i>Fusūs-ul-Hikam</i> .. 28 n39</p> <p><i>Futūḥāt-ul-Makkiya</i> .. 28 n39</p> <p><i>Qiblas-ul-Wājidiin</i> .. 26 n25</p> <p><i>Qulḥan-i-Kūs</i> .. 9 n1</p>	<p><i>Hadīkat-ul-Haḳīqat</i> .. 3 n1</p> <p><i>Hadīḳh (quoted)</i> 15 n1, 18, 19 n1, 41</p> <p><i>Hasanāt-ul-‘Arifin</i> 3 n3, 4 n1, 12 n3, 29 n48, n50, n51</p> <p><i>Kaḥf-ul-Haḳā‘ik</i> .. 34 n3</p> <p><i>Kaḥf-ul-Mahjūb (tr. Nicholson, R.A.)</i>, 24 n14, n16, n17, 25 n24, 26 n25, n26, n27, n28, n29, n31, 27 n34, n36</p> <p><i>Ibn Khallikān (tr. de Slane)</i> 24 n15</p> <p><i>Khazinat-ul-Astiyā</i>, 24 n14, n15, n17, n18, 25 n19, n20, n21, n22, n23, n24, 26 n25, n26, n27, n28, 27 n36</p> <p><i>Kur‘ān (quoted)</i> 5, 16, 24 n15, 6, 8, 9, 13 n2, 14, 15, 17, 18, 22, 30, 31, 32, 33, 38, 39, 40</p> <p><i>Literary History of Persia, (Vol II), E. G. Browne</i>, 26 n31, 27 n32, 28 n39, n40, n41, n42</p> <p><i>Ma‘ārij-un-Nubuwwat</i> .. 28 n43</p> <p><i>Majma‘-ul-Baḥra’in</i> .. 4, 41</p> <p><i>Maḥnawī (Ma‘nawī)</i> .. 28 n42</p> <p><i>Munājāt</i> .. 12 n3, 27 n32</p> <p><i>Muwatṭṭ‘</i> .. 26 n29</p> <p><i>Nafasāt-ul-Uns</i> 4 n1, 12 n3, n4, 15 n7, 24 n16, n17, n18, 25 n19, n20, n21, n22, n23, n24, 26 n25, n27, n28, n29, n31, 27 n34, n36, n36, n37, n38, 28 n39, n40, n42, n44, n45, 29 n46</p> <p><i>New Testament (The)</i> .. 16</p> <p><i>Nihāya-i-Jazari</i> .. 19 n1</p> <p><i>Old Testament (The)</i> .. 16</p> <p><i>Raḥḥāt ‘Ain-ul-Hayāt</i> 4 n1, 28 n45</p> <p><i>Risāla-i-Haḳ Numā</i> .. 12 n3</p> <p><i>Risāla-i-Suwāniḥ</i> .. 27 n36</p>
---	--

<i>Safinat-ul-Awliyā</i> 24 n14, n16, n17, 25 n19, n20, n21, n22, n23, n24, 26 n25, n26, n27, n28, n29, 27 n35, n36, n37, n38, 28 n40, n44, 29 n47	<i>Siyar-ul-'Arifin</i> .. 24 n17
<i>Sakinat-ul-Awliyā</i> 15 n1, 19 n1, 24 n18, 29 n47, n49	<i>Tabaqāt-i-'Abdullāh Anṣārī</i> 12 n4, 27 n32
<i>Shawāhid-un-Nubuwwat</i> .. 29 n46	<i>Tadhkirat-ul-Awliyā</i> , (ed. Nicholson, R.A.) 15 n7, 24 n14, n15, n16, n17, n18, 25 n19, n20, n21, n22, n23, n24, n25, 26 n26, n27, n29, n31, 28 n41
<i>Siyar-ul-Akṭāb</i> .. 25 n19	<i>Veda</i> .. 5, 16, 20, 20 n1, 37

## INDEX IV

## [TRANSLATION]

## Places mentioned in the Notes.

Al-Ahwāz .. .. 25 n24	Kashmīr .. .. 29 n49
Ajmir .. .. 28 n43	Kāutniyāna .. .. 27 n38
Badakhshān .. .. 29 n49	Kazwin .. .. 28 n41
Badr .. .. 32 n5	Khāwarān .. .. 26 n31
Baghdād 12 n3, 17 n2, 24 n15, n18, 25 n20, n21, n23, n26, 26 n27, n28, 27 n36, 28 n43	Khurāsān .. .. 24 n17, 28 n43
Baghshūr .. .. 26 n27	Khwārazm .. .. 28 n40
Baghshūr .. .. 26 n27	Kūfa .. .. 24 n17
Balkh .. .. 24 n19, 28 n42	Kūniya .. .. 28 n42
Baqra .. .. 25 n24	Lahore .. .. 29 n47, n49
Bistām .. .. 25 n22	Mahna .. .. 26 n31
Bukhārā .. .. 28 n44	Marv .. .. 15 n7, 26 n27, 25 n20
Cautillana .. .. 27 n38	Mecca .. .. 23 n11, 24 n12
Damascus .. .. 28 n39	Medina (or al-Madīna) 23 n11, n12, 32 n5
Dihli .. .. 28 n43	Murcia .. .. 27 n39
Egypt .. .. 24 n16	Perçia .. .. 29 n46
Ghāra .. .. 24 n16	Samarqand .. .. 4 n1
Hirāt .. .. 26 n27, 27 n32, 29 n46	Seville .. .. 27 n38
India .. .. 27 n33, 28 n43	Spain .. .. 27 n39
Jām .. .. 27 n33, 28 n46	Syria .. .. 25 n19
Karbala .. .. 23 n9	Tūs .. .. 27 n34
	Tustar .. .. 25 n24